

Wireless N NetUSB Router

User's Guide



Default Log	in Details	
LAN IP Address	http://192.1	68.1.1
Password	1234	

Version 1.00 Edition 2, 04/2012



www.zyxel.com

Copyright © 2012 ZyXEL Communications Corporation

IMPORTANT!

READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE.

KEEP THIS GUIDE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

Graphics in this book may differ slightly from the product due to differences in operating systems, operating system versions, or if you installed updated firmware/software for your device. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate.

Related Documentation

• Quick Start Guide

The Quick Start Guid shows how to connect the NBG-419N v2 and access the Web Configurator .

Contents Overview

Getting to Know Your Router	15
ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility	20
Connection Wizard	27
Introducing the Web Configurator	37
Monitor	43
Router Modes	49
Easy Mode	51
Router Mode	62
Access Point Mode	69
WISP Mode	76
Tutorials	87
Technical Reference	90
Wireless LAN	101
WAN	
LAN	101
DHCP Server	
	135
DHCP Server	135 139
DHCP Server Network Address Translation (NAT)	135 139 145
DHCP Server Network Address Translation (NAT) Dynamic DNS	
DHCP Server Network Address Translation (NAT) Dynamic DNS Static Route	
DHCP Server Network Address Translation (NAT) Dynamic DNS Static Route RIP	
DHCP Server Network Address Translation (NAT) Dynamic DNS Static Route RIP Firewall	
DHCP Server Network Address Translation (NAT) Dynamic DNS Static Route RIP Firewall Content Filter	
DHCP Server Network Address Translation (NAT) Dynamic DNS Static Route RIP Firewall Content Filter Bandwidth Management	
DHCP Server Network Address Translation (NAT) Dynamic DNS Static Route RIP Firewall Content Filter Bandwidth Management Remote Management	

Table of Contents

Contents Overview	3
Table of Contents	5
Part I: User's Guide	13
Chapter 1 Getting to Know Your Router	15
1.1 Overview	15
1.2 Applications	15
1.3 Ways to Manage the Router	15
1.4 Good Habits for Managing the Router	16
1.5 LEDs	17
1.6 The WPS Button	18
1.7 Wall Mounting	18
Chapter 2 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility	
2.1.1 Quick Setup	
2.1.2 Installing ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility	
2.2 The ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility	
2.2.1 The Menus	22
2.2.2 The ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Configuration Window	23
2.2.3 The Auto-Connect Printer List Window	24
2.2.4 Exit the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility	25
Chapter 3 Connection Wizard	27
3.1 Overview	27
3.2 Accessing the Wizard	27
3.3 Connect to Internet	28
3.3.1 Connection Type: DHCP	29
3.3.2 Connection Type: Static IP	29
3.3.3 Connection Type: PPPoE	30
3.3.4 Connection Type: PPTP	31
3.3.5 Connection Type: L2TP	32
3.4 Router Password	34

	3.5 Wireless Security	
	3.5.1 Wireless Security: No Security	
	3.5.2 Wireless Security: WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK	35
Chapt	tor 4	
-	lucing the Web Configurator	
	4.1 Overview4.2 Accessing the Web Configurator	
	4.2.1 Login Screen	
	4.2.2 Password Screen	
	4.2.3 Home Screen	
	4.3.1 Procedure to Use the Reset Button	
Chapt		
Monite	or	43
	5.1 Overview	43
	5.2 What You Can Do	43
	5.3 The Log Screen	43
	5.3.1 View Log	
	5.4 BW MGMT Monitor	45
	5.5 DHCP Table	45
	5.6 Packet Statistics	46
	5.7 WLAN Station Status	47
Chapt	ter 6	
	er Modes	49
		10
	6.1 Overview	
	6.1.1 Web Configurator Modes	
	6.1.2 Device Modes	
Chapt		
Easy I	Mode	51
	7.1 Overview	51
	7.2 What You Can Do	
	7.3 What You Need to Know	
	7.4 Navigation Panel	53
	7.5 Network Map	53
	7.6 Control Panel	54
	7.6.1 Game Engine	55
	7.6.2 Power Saving	55
	7.6.3 Content Filter	57
	7.6.4 Bandwidth MGMT	57

7.6.5 Firewall	58
7.6.6 Wireless Security	58
7.6.7 WPS	60
7.7 Status Screen in Easy Mode	61
Chapter 8	
Router Mode	62
8.1 Overview	62
8.2 What You Can Do	62
8.3 Status Screen	63
8.3.1 Navigation Panel	66
Chapter 9	
Access Point Mode	69
9.1 Overview	
9.2 What You Can Do	
9.3 What You Need to Know	
9.3.1 Setting your Router to AP Mode	70
9.3.2 Accessing the Web Configurator in Access Point Mode	70
9.3.3 Configuring your WLAN, Bandwidth Management and Maintenance Settings	
9.4 AP Mode Status Screen	
9.5 LAN Screen	74
Chapter 10	
WISP Mode	76
10.1 Overview	76
10.2 What You Can Do	76
10.3 What You Need to Know	76
10.3.1 Setting your Router to WISP Mode	77
10.3.2 Accessing the Web Configurator in WISP Mode	77
10.4 WISP Mode Status Screen	78
10.5 Wireless LAN General Screen	80
10.5.1 Static WEP	82
10.5.2 WPA(2)-PSK	83
10.5.3 Advance Screen	84
10.5.4 Site Survey Screen	85
Chapter 11	
Chapter 11 Tutorials	87
Tutorials	87
Tutorials	87 87 87

11.3.2 PIN Configuration	89
11.4 Enabling and Configuring Wireless Security (No WPS)	
11.4.1 Configure Your Notebook	92
11.5 Connecting to USB Storage with the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility	
11.5.1 Multiple Connections to the USB Device	94
11.6 Automatically Connecting to a USB Printer	96

Part II: Technical Reference	99
------------------------------	----

Chapter 12 Wireless LAN

Vireless LAN	
12.2 What You Can Do	
12.3 What You Should Know	
12.3.1 Wireless Security Overview	
12.4 General Wireless LAN Screen	
12.4.1 No Security	
12.4.2 WEP Encryption	
12.4.3 WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK	
12.5 MAC Filter	
12.6 Wireless LAN Advanced Screen	
12.7 Quality of Service (QoS) Screen	
12.8 WPS Screen	
12.9 WPS Station Screen	
12.10 Scheduling Screen	
12.11 WDS Screen	

Chapter 13 WAN

N	
13.1 Overview	
13.2 What You Can Do	
13.3 What You Need To Know	
13.3.1 Configuring Your Internet Connection	
13.3.2 Multicast	
13.4 Internet Connection	
13.4.1 Ethernet Encapsulation	
13.4.2 PPPoE Encapsulation	
13.4.3 PPTP Encapsulation	
13.4.4 L2TP Encapsulation	
13.5 Advanced WAN Screen	
13.6 IGMP Blocking Screen	

Chapter 14 LAN	
14.1 Overview	
14.2 What You Can Do	
14.3 What You Need To Know	
14.3.1 IP Pool Setup	
14.3.2 LAN TCP/IP	
14.3.3 IP Alias	
14.4 LAN IP Screen	
14.5 IP Alias Screen	133
Chapter 15 DHCP Server	135
15.1 Overview	
15.2 What You Can Do	135
15.3 General Screen	135
15.4 Advanced Screen	
Chapter 16 Network Address Translation (NAT)	
16.1 Overview	
16.2 What You Can Do	
16.3 General NAT Screen	
16.4 NAT Application Screen	
16.5 NAT Advanced Screen	
16.5.1 Trigger Port Forwarding Example	144
16.5.2 Two Points To Remember About Trigger Ports	
Chapter 17 Dynamic DNS	
17.1 Overview	
17.2 What You Can Do	
17.3 What You Need To Know	
17.4 Dynamic DNS Screen	145
Chapter 18 Static Route	147
18.1 Overview	
18.2 What You Can Do	147
18.3 IP Static Route Screen	148
Chapter 19 RIP	

19.1 Overview	
19.2 What You Can Do	151
19.3 RIP Screen	151
Chapter 20	
Firewall	153
20.1 Overview	
20.2 What You Can Do	
20.3 What You Need To Know	154
20.4 General Firewall Screen	
20.5 Services Screen	155
Chapter 21	
Content Filter	157
21.1 Overview	
21.2 What You Can Do	157
21.3 What You Need To Know	157
21.3.1 Content Filtering Profiles	157
21.4 Content Filter Screen	158
Chapter 22	
Bandwidth Management	
22.1 Overview	
22.2 What You Can Do	161
22.3 What You Need To Know	162
22.4 General Screen	162
22.5 Advanced Screen	162
22.5.1 Rule Configuration: Application Rule Configuration	
22.5.2 Rule Configuration: User Defined Service Rule Configuration	
22.6 Monitor Screen	
22.6.1 Predefined Bandwidth Management Services	167
Chapter 23	
Remote Management	
23.1 Overview	
23.2 What You Can Do	
23.3 What You Need to Know	
23.3.1 Remote Management and NAT	168
23.3.2 System Timeout	
23.4 WWW Screen	169
Chapter 24	
Universal Plug-and-Play (UPnP)	171

24.2 What You Can Do 171 24.3 What You Need to Know 171 24.3.1 NAT Traversal 171 24.3.2 Cautions with UPnP 172 24.4 UPnP Screen 172 24.5 Technical Refereance 172 24.5.1 Using UPnP in Windows XP Example 172 24.5.2 Web Configurator Easy Access 175 Chapter 25 Maintenance 179 25.1 Overview 179 25.2 What You Can Do 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
24.3.1 NAT Traversal 171 24.3.2 Cautions with UPnP 172 24.4 UPnP Screen 172 24.5 Technical Refereance 172 24.5.1 Using UPnP in Windows XP Example 172 24.5.2 Web Configurator Easy Access 175 Chapter 25 Maintenance 179 25.1 Overview 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
24.3.2 Cautions with UPnP 172 24.4 UPnP Screen 172 24.5 Technical Refereance 172 24.5.1 Using UPnP in Windows XP Example 172 24.5.2 Web Configurator Easy Access 175 Chapter 25 179 25.1 Overview 179 25.2 What You Can Do 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
24.4 UPnP Screen 172 24.5 Technical Refereance 172 24.5.1 Using UPnP in Windows XP Example 172 24.5.2 Web Configurator Easy Access 175 Chapter 25 175 Maintenance 179 25.1 Overview 179 25.2 What You Can Do 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
24.5 Technical Refereance 172 24.5.1 Using UPnP in Windows XP Example 172 24.5.2 Web Configurator Easy Access 175 Chapter 25 Maintenance 179 25.1 Overview 179 25.2 What You Can Do 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
24.5.1 Using UPnP in Windows XP Example 172 24.5.2 Web Configurator Easy Access 175 Chapter 25 179 25.1 Overview 179 25.2 What You Can Do 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
24.5.2 Web Configurator Easy Access 175 Chapter 25 179 25.1 Overview 179 25.2 What You Can Do 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
Chapter 25 Maintenance 179 25.1 Overview 179 25.2 What You Can Do 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
Maintenance 179 25.1 Overview 179 25.2 What You Can Do 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
Maintenance 179 25.1 Overview 179 25.2 What You Can Do 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
25.2 What You Can Do 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
25.2 What You Can Do 179 25.3 General Screen 179 25.4 Password Screen 180
25.3 General Screen
25.4 Password Screen
25.5 Time Setting Screen
25.6 Firmware Upgrade Screen
25.7 Configuration Backup/Restore Screen
25.8 Reset/Restart Screen
25.9 System Operation Mode Overview
25.10 Sys OP Mode Screen
Chapter 26 Troubleshooting
Troubleshooting.
26.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs189
26.2 Router Access and Login190
26.3 Internet Access
26.4 Resetting the Router to Its Factory Defaults
26.5 Wireless Router/AP Troubleshooting
26.6 ZyXEL Share Center Utility Problems
Appendix A Pop-up Windows, JavaScript and Java Permissions
Appendix B IP Addresses and Subnetting
Appendix C Setting Up Your Computer's IP Address
Appendix D Wireless LANs
Appendix E Common Services
Appendix F Legal Information
Index

PART I User's Guide

Getting to Know Your Router

1.1 Overview

This chapter introduces the main features and applications of the Router.

The Router extends the range of your existing wired network without additional wiring, providing easy network access to mobile users. You can set up a wireless network with other IEEE 802.11b/g/ n compatible devices.

A range of services such as a firewall and content filtering are also available for secure Internet computing. You can use media bandwidth management to efficiently manage traffic on your network. Bandwidth management features allow you to prioritize time-sensitive or highly important applications such as Voice over the Internet (VoIP).

There is one USB 2.0 port on your Router. You can connect a USB (version 2.0 or lower) memory stick, USB hard drive, or USB device for file sharing. The Router automatically detects the USB device.

- Note: For the USB function, it is strongly recommended to use version 2.0 or lower USB storage devices (such as memory sticks, USB hard drives) and/or USB devices (such as USB printers). Other USB products are not guaranteed to function properly with the Router.
- Note: Be sure to install the ZyXEL NetUSBTM Share Center Utility (for NetUSB functionality) from the included disc, or download the latest version from the zyxel.com website.

1.2 Applications

Your can create the following networks using the Router:

- Wired. You can connect network devices via the Ethernet ports of the Router so that they can communicate with each other and access the Internet.
- Wireless. Wireless clients can connect to the Router to access network resources.
- WAN. Connect to a broadband modem/router for Internet access.

1.3 Ways to Manage the Router

Use any of the following methods to manage the Router.

- Web Configurator. This is recommended for everyday management of the Router using a (supported) web browser.
- Wireless switch. You can use the built-in switch of the Router to turn the wireless function on and off without opening the Web Configurator.
- WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) button. You can use the WPS button or the WPS section of the Web Configurator to set up a wireless network with your Router.

1.4 Good Habits for Managing the Router

Do the following things regularly to make the Router more secure and to manage the Router more effectively.

- Change the password. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.
- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.
- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the Router to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you would not have to totally re-configure the Router. You could simply restore your last configuration.

1.5 LEDs

Figure 1 Front Panel



The following table describes the LEDs and the WPS button.

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION	
POWER	Green	On	The Router is receiving power and functioning properly.	
		Off	The Router is not receiving power.	
LAN 1-4	1-4 Green On The Router has a successful 10/100MB E		The Router has a successful 10/100MB Ethernet connection.	
		Blinking	The Router is sending/receiving data through the LAN.	
		Off	The LAN is not connected.	
WAN Green On The Router has a successful 10/100MB WAR		The Router has a successful 10/100MB WAN connection.		
		Blinking	The Router is sending/receiving data through the WAN.	
		Off	The WAN connection is not ready, or has failed.	
WLAN	Green	On	The Router is ready, but is not sending/receiving data through the wireless LAN.	
		Blinking	The Router is sending/receiving data through the wireless LAN.	
		Off	The wireless LAN is not ready or has failed.	
		On	WPS is enabled.	
		Blinking	The Router is negotiating a WPS connection with a wireless client.	
		Off	The wireless LAN is not ready or has failed.	

 Table 1
 Front Panel LEDs and WPS Button

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
USB	Green	On	The Router has a USB device installed.
		Blinking	The Router is transmitting and/or receiving data from routers through an installed USB device.
		Off	There is no USB device connected to the Router.

Table 1 Front Panel LEDs and WPS Button (continued)

1.6 The WPS Button

Your Router supports WiFi Protected Setup (WPS), which is an easy way to set up a secure wireless network. WPS is an industry standard specification, defined by the WiFi Alliance.

WPS allows you to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually. Each WPS connection works between two devices. Both devices must support WPS (check each device's documentation to make sure).

Depending on the devices you have, you can either press a button (on the device itself, or in its configuration utility) or enter a PIN (a unique Personal Identification Number that allows one device to authenticate the other) in each of the two devices. When WPS is activated on a device, it has two minutes to find another device that also has WPS activated. Then, the two devices connect and set up a secure network by themselves.

For more information on using WPS, see Section 11.3 on page 87.

1.7 Wall Mounting

You may need screw anchors if mounting on a concrete or brick wall.

 Table 2
 Wall Mounting Information

Distance between holes	11 cm
M4 Screws	Тwo
Screw anchors (optional)	Тwo

- 1 Select a position free of obstructions on a wall strong enough to hold the weight of the device.
- 2 Mark two holes on the wall at the appropriate distance apart for the screws.

Be careful to avoid damaging pipes or cables located inside the wall when drilling holes for the screws. **3** If using screw anchors, drill two holes for the screw anchors into the wall. Push the anchors into the full depth of the holes, then insert the screws into the anchors. Do not insert the screws all the way in - leave a small gap of about 0.5 cm.

If not using screw anchors, use a screwdriver to insert the screws into the wall. Do not insert the screws all the way in - leave a gap of about 0.5 cm.

- 4 Make sure the screws are fastened well enough to hold the weight of the Router with the connection cables.
- 5 Align the holes on the back of the Router with the screws on the wall. Hang the Router on the screws.

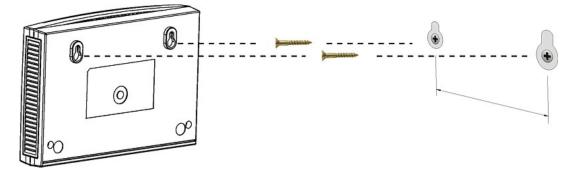


Figure 2 Wall Mounting Example

ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility

2.1 Overview

The ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility allows you to work with the USB devices that are connected directly to the Router as if they are connected directly to your computer. This allows you to easily share USB-based devices such as printers, scanners, portable hard disks, MP3 players, faxes, and digital cameras (to name a few) with all the other people in your home or office as long as they are connected to the Router and have the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility installed.

Note: Be sure to install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility (for NetUSB functionality) from the included disc, or download the latest version from the zyxel.com website.

2.1.1 Quick Setup

This section shows you how to get started using the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility.

- 1 Install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility on each computer connected to the Router.
- 2 Connect a USB device to the USB port on the Router.

Note: If you are connecting multiple devices to the Router, first connect a USB hub to the Router then connect your other USB devices to it.

3 Run the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility to display a list of all connected USB devices, then use it to connect your computer to them.

2.1.2 Installing ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility

Before you can access USB devices connected to the Router, you must first install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility on any computer on your LAN to which you want to allow access to these devices.

Note: In order to properly use the utility with your Router, ensure that the Router firmware is version v1.00(BWQ.0) or higher. See Chapter 25 on page 182 for information on updating your device's firmware.

To install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility:

- 1 Insert the disc that came with your Router into your computer's disc drive.
- 2 Run the **Setup** program by double-clicking it and then follow the on-screen instructions for installing it on your computer.

Note: The following operating systems are supported: Windows XP/Vista/7 (32 and 64-bit versions), and Mac OS X 10.6.

3 To open the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility, double-click its system tray icon.



2.2 The ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility

This section describes the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility main window.

Figure 3 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Main Window

ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center System Tools About	<u>_ ×</u>		
Configure Auto-Connect Printer	Network Scanner		
NBG			
MFP - HP - Deskjet F2400 series			
p			

The following table describes the icons in this window.

ICON	DESCRIPTION
٠	Configure Server Click to open the Router's built-in Web Configurator, which you can use to set up the Router (see Chapter 4 on page 37 for details).
L,	Auto-Connect Printer You can set the selected printer to 'auto-connect' after you have connected it to your computer during inital connection. If the printer is auto-connected to your computer, they will always be connected over the network. You do not need to configure it manually each time.
	 Note: If the computer is connecting to the shared USB printer for the first time, you need to click Connect and setup the printer before you can use the Auto-Connect Printer function. See Chapter 11 on page 87 for more details. Note: You first must install the appropriate drivers for the printer that you intend to use.

ICON	DESCRIPTION
P	Connect Select a USB device and then click this button to connect to it. Your computer can connect to as many USB devices as are connected to the Router.
8	Disconnect Select a device to which your computer is connected and then click this button to disconnect from it.
200	Request to Connect Some USB devices may not allow automatic connections over the network. If so, select the device in question and click this button to issue a request to connect to it.
4	Network Scanner Click this to open the scanner options on your computer for working with a scanner connected to the network.

 Table 3
 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Main Window Icons (continued)

2.2.1 The Menus

This section describes the utility's menus.

Figure 4 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Menus



The following table describes the menus in this screen.

MENU	ITEM	DESCRIPTION	
System	Exit	This closes the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility.	
Tools	Configuration	This opens the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility configuration window.	
	Auto-Connect Printer List	This opens the list window that displays all of the printing devices connected to the Router.	
Help	About	This opens the about window, which provides information of the utility software and driver versions.	

 Table 4
 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Main Screen Menus

MENU	ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Auto-Connect Printer	Set Auto-Connect Printer	You can set the selected printer to 'auto-connect' after you have connected it to your computer during inital connection. If the printer is auto-connected to your computer, they will always be connected over the network. You do not need to configure it manually each time. Click this to show your installed printer list and select the one you want to set as auto-connected. Note: If the computer is connecting to the shared USB
		 Note: You first must install the appropriate drivers for the printer that you intend to use.
	Delete Auto-Connect Printer	This removes the auto-connect option from the selected printer.

 Table 4
 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Main Screen Menus (continued)

2.2.2 The ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Configuration Window

This section describes the utility's configuration window, which allows you to set certain options for the utility. These options do not apply to the USB devices connected to the Router.

You can open it by clicking the **Tools** > **Configuration** menu command.

Figure 5 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Configuration Window

Z NetUSB Share Center - Configuration	×
Basic automatically execute when logging on windows	
Language English Chinese Traditional Deutsch Francais Italiano Espanol	
Note : Language setting will take effect on next execution	
OK Cancel Apply	

The following table describes the labels in this window.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
Basic	Select this to run the utility automatically when you log into or start up Windows.	
Language	Select a language for the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility. You must restart the utility for the change to take effect.	
ОК	Click this to save your changes and close the window.	
Cancel	Click this cancel to close the window without saving.	
Apply	Click this to save your changes without closing the window.	

 Table 5
 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Configuration Window

2.2.3 The Auto-Connect Printer List Window

This section describes the utility's auto-connect printer list window. You can open it by clicking the **Tools > Auto-Connect Printer List** menu command.

- Note: If the computer is connecting to the shared USB printer for the first time, you need to click **Connect** and setup the printer before you can use the **Auto-Connect Printer** function. See Chapter 11 on page 87 for more details.
- Figure 6 ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility Auto-Connect Printer List Window

ľ	Auto-Connect Printer List	X
	Server IP & Printer Name 192.168.1.1 - HP Deskjet F2400 series	Windows Printer Name HP Deskjet F2400 series
		Delete Close

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 6	ZyXEL NetUSB	Share Center	Utility A	Auto-Connect	Printer List Window
---------	--------------	--------------	-----------	--------------	---------------------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server IP & Printer Name	Displays a list of print server IPs and printer names connected to this Router.
Windows Printer Name	Displays a corresponding list of Windows printer names connected to this devices listed in the other list.
Delete	Select an printer from the list and click this to remove it.
Close	Click this to close the window.

2.2.4 Exit the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility

If you want to exit the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility when your computer is not connected to any USB device, follow the steps below:

1 Click **System > Exit** on the Utility screen. The Utility will automatically close.



Or you can close the Utlity screen first, then exit:

1 Click the **X** on the upper-right corner of the Utility:

ZyXEL NetUSB Share Cent	er	
System Tools About		-
Configure Auto-Connect Server Printer	Connect Disconnect Request to Connect	Network Scanner
NBG	32.168.1.1	

2 This will close the Utility screen to an icon at the system tray of your computer. Right-click on the Utility's icon and click Exit.



Connection Wizard

3.1 Overview

This chapter provides information on the wizard setup screens in the Web Configurator.

The Web Configurator's wizard setup helps you configure your device to access the Internet. Refer to your ISP for your Internet account information. Leave a field blank if you don't have that information.

3.2 Accessing the Wizard

Launch your web browser and type "http://192.168.1.1" as the website address. Type "1234" (default) as the password and click **Login**.

Note: The Wizard appears when the Router is accessed for the first time or when you reset the Router to its default factory settings.

The Wizard screen opens. Choose your Language and click Connect to Internet.



3.3 Connect to Internet

The Router offers five Internet connection types. They are **Static IP**, **DHCP**, **PPPoE**, **PPTP** or **L2TP**. The wizard attempts to detect which WAN connection type you are using.

Figure 8 Detecting your Internet Connection Type



If the wizard does not detect a connection type, you must select one from the drop-down list box. Check with your ISP to make sure you use the correct type.

Note: If you get an error message, check your hardware connections. Make sure your Internet connection is up and running.

The following screen depends on your Internet connection type. Enter the details provided by your Internet Service Provider (ISP) in the fields (if any).

Figure 9 Internet Connection Type



Your Router detects the following Internet Connection type.

CONNECTION TYPE	DESCRIPTION
Static IP	Select the Static IP if an administrator assigns the IP address of your computer.
DHCP	Select the DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) option when the WAN port is used as a regular Ethernet.
PPPoE	Select the PPPoE (Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet) option for a dial-up connection.
РРТР	Select the PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) option for a dial-up connection, and your ISP gave you an IP address and/or subnet mask.
L2TP	Select the L2TP (Layer 2 Tunnel Protocol) if you are connecting to another device over another network (like the Internet or VPN).

Table 7 Internet Connection Type

3.3.1 Connection Type: DHCP

Choose **DHCP** as the **Internet Connection Type** when the WAN port is used as a regular Ethernet. Click **Next**.

Figure 10 Internet Connection Type: DHCP

Connect to Internet 🔅 Router Password 🌾 Wireless Security
Internet Connection Type: DHCP 🚽
Generally, when your connection type is DHCP, it means the Internet service is available while you open your computer.
Please click Next to continue.
Exit Back Next

Note: If you get an error screen after clicking **Next**, you might have selected the wrong Internet Connection type. Click **Back**, make sure your Internet connection is working and select the right Connection Type. Contact your ISP if you are not sure of your Internet Connection type.

3.3.2 Connection Type: Static IP

Choose **Static IP** as the **Internet Connection Type** if your ISP assigned an IP address for your Internet connection. Click **Next**.

Connect to Internet 🔅 👎	Router Password	d 🗦 Wirel	ess Security		
1					
Internet Connection Type:	Static IP 💌				
Please refer to the information p following blanks.	rovided by your In	iternet Service	Provider (ISP) ar	nd complete [.]	the
IP Address: Subnet Mask: Default Gateway: Primary DNS: Secondary DNS:					
			Exit	Back	Next

Figure 11 Internet Connection Type: Static IP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Internet Connection Type	Select the Static IP option.
IP Address	Enter the IP address provided by your ISP.

Table 8 Internet Connection Type: Static IP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask in this field.
Default Gateway	Enter the gateway IP address in this field.
Primary DNS	DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a computer before you can access it. The Router uses a system DNS server (in the order you specify here) to resolve domain names for DDNS and the time server. Enter the primary DNS server's IP address in the fields provided.
Secondary DNS	Enter the secondary DNS server's IP address in the fields provided.
Exit	Click this to close the wizard screen without saving.
Back	Click this to return to the previous screen.
Next	Click this to continue.

 Table 8
 Internet Connection Type: Static IP (continued)

3.3.3 Connection Type: PPPoE

Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) functions as a dial-up connection. PPPoE is an IETF (Internet Engineering Task Force) standard specifying how a host personal computer interacts with a broadband modem (for example DSL, cable, wireless, etc.) to achieve access to high-speed data networks.

For the service provider, PPPoE offers an access and authentication method that works with existing access control systems (for instance, RADIUS).

One of the benefits of PPPoE is the ability to let end users access one of multiple network services, a function known as dynamic service selection. This enables the service provider to easily create and offer new IP services for specific users.

Operationally, PPPoE saves significant effort for both the subscriber and the ISP/carrier, as it requires no specific configuration of the broadband modem at the subscriber's site.

By implementing PPPoE directly on the Router (rather than individual computers), the computers on the LAN do not need PPPoE software installed, since the Router does that part of the task. Furthermore, with NAT, all of the LAN's computers will have Internet access.

Connect to Internet 🔅	Router Password	Wireless Security	
1			
Internet Connection Type:	PPPoE		
Please refer to the information following blanks.	provided by your Interne	t Service Provider (ISP) an	d complete the
©Dynamic IP ©Static IP			
IP Address:	0.0.0		
User Name:	pppoe user	(A~Z ; 0~9)	
Password:	*******		
		Exit	Back Next

Figure 12 Internet Connection Type: PPPoE

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Internet Connection Type	Select the PPPoE option for a dial-up connection.
Dynamic IP	Select this radio button if your ISP did not assign you a fixed IP address.
Static IP	Select this radio button, provided by your ISP to give the Router a fixed, unique IP address.
IP Address	Type the name of your service provider.
User Name	Type the user name given to you by your ISP.
Password	Type the password associated with the user name above.
Exit	Click this to close the wizard screen without saving.
Back	Click this to return to the previous screen.
Next	Click this to continue.

 Table 9
 Internet Connection Type: PPPoE

3.3.4 Connection Type: PPTP

Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) is a network protocol that enables transfers of data from a remote client to a private server, creating a Virtual Private Network (VPN) using TCP/IP-based networks.

PPTP supports on-demand, multi-protocol, and virtual private networking over public networks, such as the Internet.

Refer to the appendix for more information on PPTP.

The Router supports one PPTP server connection at any given time.

Figure 13 Internet Connection Type: PPTP

Connect to Internet > R	outer Password	Wireless Sec	urity		
1					
Internet Connection Type:	PPTP -				
Please refer to the information pro following blanks.	ovided by your Internet	Service Provider	r (ISP) and	d complete t	he
Dynamic IP OStatic IP					
PPTP Address:	172.1.1.1				
PPTP Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0				
PPTP Gateway IP Address:	172.1.1.254				
PPTP Server IP Address:	172.1.1.254				
User Name:	pptp user				
Password:	*****				
		-	Exit	Back	Next

The following table describes the fields in this screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Internet Connection Type	Select PPTP from the drop-down list box. To configure a PPTP client, you must configure the User Name and Password fields for a PPP connection and the PPTP parameters for a PPTP connection.
Dynamic IP	Select this radio button if your ISP did not assign you a fixed IP address.
Static IP	Select this radio button, provided by your ISP to give the Router a fixed, unique IP address.
PPTP Address	Type the (static) IP address assigned to you by your ISP.
PPTP Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask assigned to you by your ISP (if given).
PPTP Gateway IP Address	Type the gateway IP address of the PPTP server.
PPTP Server IP Address	Type the server IP address of the PPTP server.
User Name	Type the user name given to you by your ISP.
Password	Type the password associated with the User Name above.
Exit	Click this to close the wizard screen without saving.
Back	Click this to return to the previous screen.
Next	Click this to continue.

 Table 10
 Internet Connection Type: PPTP

3.3.5 Connection Type: L2TP

The Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) works at layer 2 (the data link layer) to tunnel network traffic between two peer devices over another network (like the Internet).

Figure 14	Internet	Connection	Type:	I 2TP
i iguic i t	Internet	connection	iypc.	

Connect to Internet 🔶 R	outer Password 🗦 Wireless Security
1	
Internet Connection Type:	L2TP -
Please refer to the information pr following blanks.	ovided by your Internet Service Provider (ISP) and complete the
Dynamic IP OStatic IP	15
L2TP Address:	172.1.1.1
L2TP Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0
L2TP Gateway IP Address:	172.1.1.254
L2TP Server IP Address:	172.1.1.254
User Name:	I2tp user
Password:	I2tp passwd
	Exit Back Next

The following table describes the fields in this screen

 Table 11
 Internet Connection Type: L2TP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Internet Connection Type	Select L2TP from the drop-down list box.
Dynamic IP	Select this radio button if your ISP did not assign you a fixed IP address.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Static IP	Select this radio button, provided by your ISP to give the Router a fixed, unique IP address.
L2TP Address	Type the (static) IP address assigned to you by your ISP.
L2TP Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask assigned to you by your ISP (if given).
L2TP Gateway IP Address	Type the gateway IP address of the L2TP server.
L2TP Server IP Address	Type the server IP address of the L2TP server.
User Name	Type the user name given to you by your ISP.
Password	Type the password associated with the User Name above.
Exit	Click this to close the wizard screen without saving.
Back	Click this to return to the previous screen.
Next	Click this to continue.

 Table 11
 Internet Connection Type: L2TP (continued)

The Router connects to the Internet.

Figure 15 Connecting to the Internet



Note: If the Wizard successfully connects to the Internet, it proceeds to the next step. If you get an error message, go back to the previous screen and make sure you have entered the correct information provided by your ISP.

3.4 Router Password

Change the login password in the following screen. Enter the new password and retype it to confirm. Click **Next** to proceed with the **Wireless Security** screen.

Figure 16 Router Password

Connect to Internet >	Router Password	> Wireless Security	
~	2		
Change router password It is highly recommended to (1234).		or password instead of the fac	ctory default one
Password:	****		
Verify Password:	****		
		Exit	Back Next

3.5 Wireless Security

Configure Wireless Settings. Configure the wireless network settings on your Router in the following screen. The fields that show up depend on the kind of security you select.

3.5.1 Wireless Security: No Security

Choose **No Security** in the Wireless Security screen to let wireless devices within range access your wireless network.



Figure 17 Wireless Security: No Security

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 12	Wireless	Security	: No	Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Network Name (SSID)	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable 7-bit ASCII characters) for the wireless LAN. If you change this field on the Router, make sure all wireless stations use the same SSID in order to access the network.
Security mode	Select a Security level from the drop-down list box. Choose None to have no wireless LAN security configured. If you do not enable any wireless security on your Router, your network is accessible to any wireless networking device that is within range.
Exit	Click this to close the wizard screen without saving.
Back	Click this to return to the previous screen.
Next	Click this to continue.

3.5.2 Wireless Security: WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK

Choose **WPA-PSK** or **WPA2-PSK** security in the Wireless Security screen to set up a password for your wireless network.

Connect to Internet > Router	Password >	Wireless So	ecurity		
· ·	~	3			
Wireless Security A protected wireless network secur wirelessly. Guard it with one of the				y network acti∨ities	
Wireless Network Name (SSID):	NBG-419N				
Security mode:	WPA2-PSK				
Wireless password :	*****				
Verify Password:	*****				
			Exit	Back Ne:	at

Figure 18 Wireless Security: WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
Wireless Network Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable 7-bit ASCII characters) for the wireless LAN.	
(SSID)	If you change this field on the Router, make sure all wireless stations use the same SSID in order to access the network.	
Security mode	Select a Security level from the drop-down list box.	
	Choose WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK security to configure a Pre-Shared Key. Choose this option only if your wireless clients support WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK respectively.	
Wireless password	Type from 8 to 63 case-sensitive ASCII characters. You can set up the most secure wireless connection by configuring WPA in the wireless LAN screens.	
Verify Password	Retype the password to confirm.	
Exit	Click this to close the wizard screen without saving.	

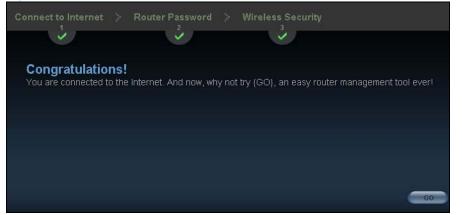
Table 13	Wireless	Security:	WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK	(continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Back	Click this to return to the previous screen.
Next	Click this to continue.

Congratulations! Open a web browser, such as Internet Explorer, to visit your favorite website.

Note: If you cannot access the Internet when your computer is connected to one of the Router's LAN ports, check your connections. Then turn the Router off, wait for a few seconds then turn it back on. If that does not work, log in to the web configurator again and check you have typed all information correctly. See the User's Guide for more suggestions.

Figure 19 Congratulations



You can also click **ZyGO** to open the **Easy Mode** Web Configurator of your Router.

You have successfully set up your Router to operate on your network and access the Internet. You are now ready to connect wirelessly to your Router and access the Internet.

4

Introducing the Web Configurator

4.1 Overview

This chapter describes how to access the Router Web Configurator and provides an overview of its screens.

The Web Configurator is an HTML-based management interface that allows easy setup and management of the Router via Internet browser. Use Internet Explorer 6.0 and later or Netscape Navigator 7.0 and later versions or Safari 2.0 or later versions. The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels.

In order to use the Web Configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device. Web pop-up blocking is enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

Refer to the Troubleshooting chapter (Chapter 26 on page 189) to see how to make sure these functions are allowed in Internet Explorer.

4.2 Accessing the Web Configurator

- 1 Make sure your Router hardware is properly connected and prepare your computer or computer network to connect to the Router (refer to the Quick Start Guide).
- 2 Launch your web browser.
- **3** Type "http://192.168.1.1" as the website address.

Your computer must be in the same subnet in order to access this website address.

4.2.1 Login Screen

Note: If this is the first time you are accessing the Web Configurator, you may be redirected to the Wizard. Refer to Chapter 3 on page 27 for the Connection Wizard screens.

The Web Configurator initially displays the following login screen.

Figure 20 Login screen	
ZyXEL	
	NBG-419N v2 Welcome to the router configuration interface. Enter the password and click 'Login'. Password : max 30 alphanumeric, printable characters and no spaces (max 30 alphanumeric, printable characters and no spaces (max 30 alphanumeric).
	15:03:09 2009-04-06

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 14 Login Screen		
LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
Password	Type "1234" (default) as the password.	
Language	Select the language you want to use to configure the Web Configurator. Click Login.	
	This shows the current weather, either in celsius or fahrenheit, of the city you specify in Section 4.2.3.1 on page 40.	
15:03:09 2009-04-06	This shows the time (hh:mm:ss) and date (yyyy:mm:dd) of the timezone you select in Section 4.2.3.2 on page 40 or Section 25.5 on page 181. The time is in 24-hour format, for example 15:00 is 3:00 PM.	

4.2.2 Password Screen

You should see a screen asking you to change your password (highly recommended) as shown next.



	Use this screen to change the password.			
	The Wizard setup walks you through the most common configuration settings. We suggest you use this mode if it is the first time you are setting up your router or if you need to make basic configuration changes.			
	Use Advanced mode if you need access to more advanced features not included in Wizard mode.			
	New Password:			
	Retype to Confirm:			
L				
	Apply			

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
New Password	Type a new password.	
Retype to Confirm	Retype the password for confirmation.	
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.	
Ignore	Click Ignore if you do not want to change the password this time.	

Table 15	Change	Password	Screen
	Change	rassworu	JUICEII

Note: The management session automatically times out when the time period set in the **Administrator Inactivity Timer** field expires (default five minutes; go to Chapter 25 on page 179 to change this). Simply log back into the Router if this happens.

4.2.3 Home Screen

If you have previously logged into the Web Configurator but did not click **Logout**, you may be redirected to the Home screen.

You can also open this screen by clicking **Home** (or **Constant**) in the Easy Mode or Expert mode screens.

The Home screen displays as follows.

Figure 22 Home Screen	
ZyXEL	
	NBG-419N v2 Welcome to the router configuration interface. Please click "GO" and go to Basic Mode.
2009-044	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

	DESCRIPTION
Go	Click this to open the Easy mode Web Configurator.
Language	Select a language to go to the Easy mode Web Configurator in that language and click Login.

Table 16 Home Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	(This is just an example). This shows the current weather, either in celsius or fahrenheit, of the city you specify in Section 4.2.3.1 on page 40.
15:03:09 2009-04-06	(This is just an example). This shows the time (hh:mm:ss) and date (yyyy:mm:dd) of the timezone you select in Section 4.2.3.2 on page 40 or Section 25.5 on page 181.

 Table 16
 Home Screen (continued)

4.2.3.1 Weather Edit

You can change the temperature unit and select the location for which you want to know the weather.

icon to change the Weather display. Click the

Figure 23 Change Weather

℃ . Change I	ocation
UK - Greenv USA - New	
	Finish

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 17 Change Weather

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
°C or °F	Choose which temperature unit you want the Router to display.
Change Location	Select the location for which you want to know the weather. If the city you want is not listed, choose one that is closest to it.
Finish	Click this to apply the settings and refresh the date and time display.

4.2.3.2 Time/Date Edit

One timezone can cover more than one country. You can choose a particular country in which the Router is located and have the Router display and use the current time and date for its logs.



Click the 🕢 icon to change the Weather display.

Figure 24 Change Password Screen



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 18	Change	Password	Screen
----------	--------	----------	--------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Change time zone	Select the specific country whose current time and date you want the Router to display.
Finish	Click this to apply the settings and refresh the weather display.

Note: You can also edit the timezone in Section 25.5 on page 181.

4.3 Resetting the Router

If you forget your password or IP address, or you cannot access the Web Configurator, you will need to use the **RESET** button at the back of the Router to reload the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all configurations that you had previously saved, the password will be reset to "1234" and the IP address will be reset to "192.168.1.1".

4.3.1 Procedure to Use the Reset Button

- 1 Make sure the power LED is on.
- 2 Press the **RESET** button for longer than 1 second to restart/reboot the Router.
- **3** Press the **RESET** button for longer than five seconds to set the Router back to its factory-default configurations.



5.1 Overview

This chapter discusses read-only information related to the device state of the Router.

Note: To access the Monitor screens, you can also click the links in the Summary table of the Status screen to view the bandwidth consumed, packets sent/received as well as the status of clients connected to the Router.

5.2 What You Can Do

- Use the Log (Section 5.3 on page 43) screen to see the logs for the activity on the Router.
- Use the **BW MGMT Monitor** screen (Section 5.4 on page 45) to view the amount of network bandwidth that applications running in the network are using.
- Use the **DHCP Table** screen (Section 5.5 on page 45) to view information related to your DHCP status.
- use the **Packet Statistics** screen (Section 5.6 on page 46) to view port status, packet specific statistics, the "system up time" and so on.
- Use the WLAN Station Status screen (Section 5.7 on page 47) to view the wireless stations that are currently associated to the Router.

5.3 The Log Screen

The Web Configurator allows you to look at all of the Router's logs in one location.

5.3.1 View Log

Use the **View Log** screen to see the logged messages for the Router. The log wraps around and deletes the old entries after it fills. Select what logs you want to see from the **Display** drop list. The

log choices depend on your settings in the **Log Settings** screen. Click **Refresh** to renew the log screen. Click **Clear** to delete all the logs.

Figure 25 View Log

Disp	lay : all log	×		
Summ	ary			
#	Time	Message		
1	Jan 1 00:00:28	NBG-419N daemon.notice ntpclient[2615]: Using NTP server: 192.5.41.41		
2	Jan 18 02:33:01	NBG-419N daemon.notice ntpclient[2615]: Wed Jan 18 02:33:00 UTC 2012 time set from remote server		
3	Jan 18 02:33:03	NBG-419N user.info webmanagement[633]: Boa/0.93.15 started		
4	Jan 18 02:33:06	NBG-419N local0.info udhcpd[1628]: Sending OFFER of 192.168.1.33		
5	Jan 18 02:33:07	NBG-419N local0.info udhcpd[1628]: Sending ACK to 192.168.1.33		
6	Jan 18 02:33:07	NBG-419N local0.info udhcpd[1628]: DHCP Server assigned 192.168.1.33 to 00:24:21:7e:20:96		
7	Jan 18 02:33:12	NBG-419N authpriv.info webmanagement[633]: Web management login password success for user 'admin' from 192.168.1.33 port:80.		
8	Jan 18 00 93:19	NBG-419N local0.info udhcod		
50	Jan 18 02:47:23	NBG-419N daemon:notice ntpclient[3767]; Using NTP server: 203.117.180.36		
51	Jan 18 02:47:25	NBG-419N daemon.notice ntpclient[4068]: Using NTP server: 192.5.41.41		
52	Jan 18 02:47:28	NBG-419N daemon.notice ntpclient[4068]: Wed Jan 18 02:47:27 UTC 2012 time set from remote server		

You can configure which logs to display in the **View Log** screen. Go to the **Log Settings** screen and select the logs you wish to display. Click **Apply** to save your settings. Click **Refresh** to start the screen afresh.

Figure 26 Log Settings	Figure	26	Log	Settings	
------------------------	--------	----	-----	----------	--

View Log Log Settings	
Active Log	
Veb Management	
DNS	
PPP	
UPnP	
Vireless	
NTPClient	
System Warning	
DHCP Server	
DHCP Client	
DDNS	
Firewall	
	Apply Refresh

5.4 BW MGMT Monitor

The Bandwidth Management (BW MGMT) Monitor allows you to view the amount of network bandwidth that applications running in the network are using.

The bandwidth is measured in kilobits per second (kbps).

The monitor shows what kinds of applications are running in the network, the maximum kbps that each application can use, as well as the percentage of bandwidth it is using.

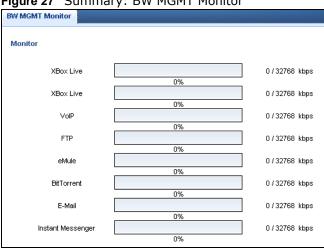


Figure 27 Summary: BW MGMT Monitor

5.5 DHCP Table

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual clients to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the Router's LAN as a DHCP server or disable it. When configured as a server, the Router provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If DHCP service is disabled, you must have another DHCP server on that network, or else the computer must be manually configured.

Click the **DHCP Table (Details...)** hyperlink in the **Status** screen. Read-only information here relates to your DHCP status. The DHCP table shows current DHCP client information (including **IP Address**, **Host Name** and **MAC Address**) of all network clients using the Router's DHCP server.



DHC	P Table			
DH	CP Client	Fable		
	Table L	ist		
	#	MAC Address	IP Address	Expires in
	F			
			Refresh	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION			
#	This is the index number of the host computer.			
MAC Address	This field shows the MAC address of the computer with the name in the Host Name field. Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address which uniquely identifies a device. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02.			
IP Address	This field displays the IP address relative to the # field listed above.			
Expires in	This field displays the time when the IP address and MAC address association ends.			
Refresh	Click Refresh to renew the screen.			

 Table 19
 Summary: DHCP Table

5.6 Packet Statistics

Click the **Packet Statistics (Details...)** hyperlink in the **Status** screen. Read-only information here includes port status, packet specific statistics and the "system up time". The **Poll Interval(s)** field is configurable and is used for refreshing the screen.

Packet	Statistics						
Port	Status	TxPkts	RxPkts	Collisions	Tx B/s	Rx B/s	Up Time
WAN	100M	13625	31171	0	1954809	19399482	01:29:11
LAN	100M	13024	7748	0	14250762	673520	01:29:11
WLAN	Down	0	2	0	0	343	00:00:00

Figure 29 Summary: Packet Statistics

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the Router's port type.
Status	For the LAN ports, this displays the port speed and duplex setting or Down when the line is disconnected.
	For the WAN port, it displays the port speed and duplex setting if you're using Ethernet encapsulation and Idle (line (ppp) idle), Dial (starting to trigger a call) and Drop (dropping a call) if you're using PPPoE or PPTP encapsulation. This field displays Down when the line is disconnected.
For the WLAN, it displays the maximum transmission rate when the WLAN is Down when the WLAN is disabled.	
TxPkts	This is the number of transmitted packets on this port.
RxPkts	This is the number of received packets on this port.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
Collisions	This is the number of collisions on this port.	
Tx B/s	This displays the transmission speed in bytes per second on this port.	
Rx B/s	This displays the reception speed in bytes per second on this port.	
Up Time	This is the total time the Router has been for each session.	
System Up Time	This is the total time the Router has been on.	
Poll Interval(s)	Enter the time interval in seconds for refreshing statistics in this field.	
Set Interval	Click this button to apply the new poll interval you entered in the Poll Interval(s) field.	
Stop	Click Stop to stop refreshing statistics.	

 Table 20
 Summary: Packet Statistics (continued)

5.7 WLAN Station Status

Click the **WLAN Station Status (Details...)** hyperlink in the **Status** screen. View the wireless stations that are currently associated to the Router in the **Association List**. Association means that a wireless client (for example, your network or computer with a wireless network card) has connected successfully to the AP (or wireless router) using the same SSID, channel and security settings.

Figure 30	Summary:	Wireless	Association List	
i igui o oo	Sammary	111101000		

Ass	ociation L	ist	
As	sociation	List	
	Associ	ation List	
	#	MAC Address	Association Time
			Refresh

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
#	his is the index number of an associated wireless station.	
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of an associated wireless station.	
Association Time	This field displays the time a wireless station first associated with the Router's WLAN network.	
Refresh	Click Refresh to reload the list.	

 Table 21
 Summary: Wireless Association List

Router Modes

6.1 Overview

This chapter introduces the different modes available on your Router. First, the term "mode" refers to two things in this User's Guide.

- Web Configurator mode. This refers to the Web Configurator interface you want to use for editing Router features.
- **Device mode**. This is the operating mode of your Router, or simply how the Router is being used in the network.

6.1.1 Web Configurator Modes

This refers to the configuration interface of the Web Configurator, which has two modes:

- **Easy**. The Web Configurator shows this mode by default. Refer to Chapter 7 on page 51 for more information on the screens in this mode. This interface may be sufficient for users who just want to use the device.
- Expert. Advanced users can change to this mode to customize all the functions of the Router. Click Expert Mode after logging into the Web Configurator. The User's Guide Chapter 4 on page 37 through Chapter 25 on page 179 discusses the screens in this mode.

6.1.2 Device Modes

This refers to the operating mode of the Router, which can act as a:

- **Router**. This is the default device mode of the Router. Use this mode to connect the local network to another network, like the Internet. Go to Section 8.3 on page 63 to view the **Status** screen in this mode.
- Access Point. Use this mode if you want to extend your network by allowing network devices to connect to the Router wirelessly. Go to Section 9.4 on page 72 view the Status screen in this mode.
- WISP mode. Use this mode if there is an existing wireless router or access point in the network to which you want to connect your local network. Go to Section 10.4 on page 78 to view the Status screen in this mode.

For more information on these modes and to change the mode of your Router, refer to Section 25.10 on page 187.

The menu for changing device modes is available in Expert mode only.

Note: Choose your Device Mode carefully to avoid having to change it later.

When changing to another mode, the IP address of the Router changes. The running applications and services of the network devices connected to the Router can be interrupted.

In WISP mode, you should know the SSID and wireless security details of the access point to which you want to connect.

Easy Mode

7.1 Overview

The Web Configurator is set to **Easy Mode** by default. You can configure several key features of the Router in this mode. This mode is useful to users who are not fully familiar with some features that are usually intended for network administrators.

When you log in to the Web Configurator, the following screen opens.

NBG-419N v2 (f) Home Expert Mode \geq Modem Mike PC Howard PC **Network Map** NBG-419N v2 颕 Firewall Game Engine Power Saving Content Filter Wireless Bandwidth OFF ON ON ON ON

Figure 31 Easy Mode: Network Map

Click Status to open the following screen screen.

NBG-419N v	Navigation Panel	Home 🖉 Expert Mode 🕒 Logout
Go to Network Map Screen	System Name : Time : WAN IP : MAC Address :	2000-01-01 00:29:58 172.23.26.8 00:0C:43:33:52:60
Network MAP	Firmware Version : Wireless Network Name (SSID) : Security : Status S	1.00(AACU.0)B1
Game Engine		
ON OFF	ON OFF ON OFF	IN OFF

Figure 32 Easy Mode: Status Screen

7.2 What You Can Do

You can do the following in this mode:

- Use this Navigation Panel (Section 7.4 on page 53) to opt out of the Easy mode.
- Use the **Network Map** screen (Section 7.5 on page 53) to check if your Router can ping the gateway and whether it is connected to the Internet.
- Use the **Control Panel** (Section 7.6 on page 54) to configure and enable Router features, including wireless security, wireless scheduling and bandwidth management and so on.
- Use the **Status Screen** screen (Section 7.7 on page 61) to view read-only information about the Router, including the WAN IP, MAC Address of the Router and the firmware version.

7.3 What You Need to Know

Between the different device modes, the Control Panel (Section 7.6 on page 54) changes depending on which features are applicable to the mode:

- Router Mode: All Control Panel features are available.
- Access Point Mode: Only Power Saving and Wireless Security are available.
- WISP Mode: The available features for this mode are Game Console, Content Filter, Bandwidth MGMT, and Firewall.

7.4 Navigation Panel

Use this navigation panel to opt out of the **Easy** mode.

Figure 33 Control Panel

NBG-419N v2	Home (Expert Mode	ELogout
-------------	--------	-------------	---------

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 22 Control Panel

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	
Home	Click this to go to the Login page.	
Expert Mode	Click this to change to Expert mode and customize features of the Router.	
Logout	Click this to end the Web Configurator session.	

7.5 Network Map

- Note: The Network MAP is viewable by Windows XP (need to install patch), Windows Vista and Windows 7 users only. For Windows XP (Service Pack 2) users, you can see the network devices connected to the Router by downloading the LLTD (Link Layer Topology Discovery) patch from the Microsoft Website.
- Note: Don't worry if the Network Map does not display in your web browser. This feature may not be supported by your system. You can still configure the Control Panel (Section 7.6 on page 54) in the Easy Mode and the Router features that you want to use in the Expert Mode.

When you log into the Network Configurator, the Network Map is shown as follows.

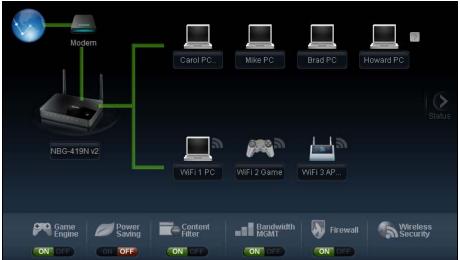


Figure 34 Network Map

The line connecting the Router to the gateway becomes green when the Router is able to ping the gateway. It becomes red when the ping initiating from the Router does not get a response from the gateway. The same rule applies to the line connecting the gateway to the Internet.

You can also view the devices (represented by icons indicating the kind of network device) connected to the Router, including those connecting wirelessly. Right-click on the Router icon to refresh the network map and go to the Wizard. Right click on the other icons to view information about the device.

7.6 Control Panel

The features configurable in Easy Mode are shown in the Control Panel.

Figure 35 Con	trol Panel				
Game Engine	Power Saving	Content	Bandwidth	颕 Firewall	Wireless Security
				•	en security
ONCORE	OFF OFF	ON DEE	ON OFF	ON OTE	

Switch **ON** to enable the feature. Otherwise, switch **OFF**. If the feature is turned on, the green light flashes. If it is turned off, the red light flashes.

Additionally, click the feature to open a screen where you can edit its settings.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

ITEM	DESCRIPTION		
Game Engine	Switch ON to maximize bandwidth for gaming traffic in your network. Otherwise, switch OFF .		
	Refer to Section 7.6.1 on page 55 to see this screen.		
Power Saving	Click this to schedule the wireless feature of the Router.		
	Disabling the wireless function helps lower the energy consumption of the Router.		
	Switch ON to apply wireless scheduling. Otherwise, switch OFF .		
	Refer to Section 7.6.2 on page 55 to see this screen.		
Content Filter	Click this to restrict access to certain websites, based on keywords contained in URLs, to which you do not want users in your network to open.		
	Switch ON to apply website filtering. Otherwise, switch OFF .		
	Refer to Section 7.6.3 on page 57 to see this screen.		
Bandwidth	Click this to edit bandwidth management for predefined applications.		
MGMT	Switch ON to have the Router management bandwidth for uplink and downlink traffic according to an application or service. Otherwise, switch OFF .		
	Refer to Section 7.6.4 on page 57 to see this screen.		

Table 23 Control Panel

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Firewall	Switch ON to ensure that your network is protected from Denial of Service (DoS) attacks. Otherwise, switch OFF .
	Refer to Section 7.6.5 on page 58 to see this screen.
Wireless Security	Click this to configure the wireless security, such as SSID, security mode and WPS key on your Router.
	Refer to Section 7.6.6 on page 58 to see this screen.

 Table 23
 Control Panel (continued)

7.6.1 Game Engine

When this feature is enabled, the Router maximizes the bandwidth for gaming traffic that it forwards out through an interface.

Figure 36 Game Engine

M Game Engine	X
Whenever you turn the Game Engine on, the router is designated to offer a better gaming experience. The Game Console option in Bandwidth Management will be prioritized to the highest level and cannot be re-arranged until the Game Engine is turned off.	
ОК	

Note: When this is switched on, the **Game Console** tab in the **Bandwidth MGMT** screen is automatically positioned on top.

Turn this off if your network is not using gaming.

Click **OK** to close this screen.

7.6.2 Power Saving

Use this screen to set the day of the week and time of the day when your wireless LAN is turned on and off. Wireless LAN scheduling is disabled by default.

Disabling the wireless capability lowers the energy consumption of the of the Router.

Figure 37 Power Saving

🥭 Power Sa	iving	X
Please sche	dule the wirele	ess service with the table below.
WLAN status	Dav	For the following times (24-Hour Format)
C On © Off		00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
€ On € Off	□ Mon	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
C On C Off	🗖 Tue	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
C On C Off	□ Wed	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
C on 🖲 Off	🗖 Thu	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
C On C Off	🗖 Fri	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
C On C Off	🗖 Sat	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
C On C Off	🗖 Sun	00 • (hour) 00 • (min) ~ 00 • (hour) 00 • (min)
		Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WLAN Status	Select On or Off to specify whether the Wireless LAN is turned on or off (depending on what you selected in the WLAN Status field). This field works in conjunction with the Day and Except for the following times fields.
Day	Select Everyday or the specific days to turn the Wireless LAN on or off.
	If you select Everyday you can not select any specific days. This field works in conjunction with the Except for the following times field.
For the following times (24-Hour Format)	Select a begin time using the first set of hour and minute (min) drop down boxes and select an end time using the second set of hour and minute (min) drop down boxes. If you have chosen On earlier for the WLAN Status the Wireless LAN will turn on between the two times you enter in these fields. If you have chosen Off earlier for the WLAN Status the Wireless LAN will turn off between the two times you enter in these fields. In this time format, midnight is 00:00 and progresses up to 24:00. For example, 6:00 PM is 18:00.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 24 Power Saving

7.6.3 Content Filter

Use this screen to restrict access to certain websites, based on keywords contained in URLs, to which you do not want users in your network to open.

Figure 38 Content Filter

Content Filter	X
Any URLs that contains any of the following keywords will be blocked and cannot be browsed.	
Add Key Word Add Delete	
Example 1	
Example 2	
Example 3	
Apply Cancel	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 25 Content Filter

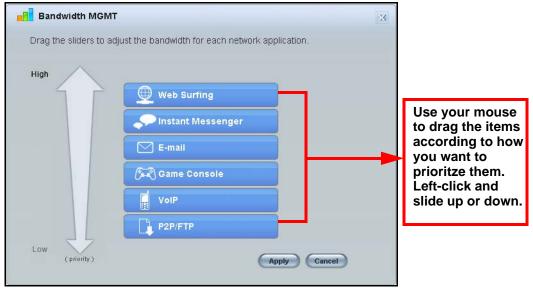
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click Add after you have typed a keyword.
	Repeat this procedure to add other keywords. Up to 64 keywords are allowed.
	Note: The Router does not recognize wildcard characters as keywords.
	When you try to access a web page containing a keyword, you will get a message telling you that the content filter is blocking this request.
Delete	Highlight a keyword in the text box and click Delete to remove it. The keyword disappears from the text box after you click Apply .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.
Cancel	Click Cancel to close this screen without saving any changes.

7.6.4 Bandwidth MGMT

Use this screen to set bandwidth allocation to pre-defined services and applications for bandwidth allocation.

The Router uses bandwidth management for incoming and outgoing traffic. Rank the services and applications by dragging them accordingly from **High** to **Low** and click **Apply**. Click **Cancel** to close the screen.





7.6.5 Firewall

Enable this feature to protect the network from Denial of Service (DoS) attacks. The Router blocks repetitive pings from the WAN that can otherwise cause systems to slow down or hang.

Figure 40 Firewall		
🦁 Firewall		X
Enabling Firewall protects Internet.	your computers against mal	icious attacks from the
		ОК

Click **OK** to close this screen.

7.6.6 Wireless Security

Use this screen to configure security for your the Wireless LAN. You can enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode in the following screen.

Note: You can enable the Wireless function of your Router by first turning on the switch in the back panel.

Figure 41 Wireless Security

Wireless Security		×
network with a security mode	vithout encryption is not safe. Guard you e and the password you setup. And ther ters to your wireless network with just o	n, you can use
Wireless Network Name (SSID): ZyXEL335260	
Security mode :	WPA-PSK	6
Wireless password :		WPS
Verify password :		

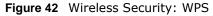
The following table describes the general wireless LAN labels in this screen.

Table 26Wireless Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Network Name (SSID)	(Service Set IDentity) The SSID identifies the Service Set with which a wireless station is associated. Wireless stations associating to the access point (AP) must have the same SSID. Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 keyboard characters) for the wireless LAN.
Security mode	Select WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK to add security on this wireless network. The wireless clients which want to associate to this network must have same wireless security settings as this device. After you select to use a security, additional options appears in this screen. Select No Security to allow any client to connect to this network without authentication.
Wireless	This field appears when you choose wither WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK as the security mode.
password	Type a pre-shared key from 8 to 63 case-sensitive keyboard characters.
Verify password	Type the password again to confirm.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Cancel	Click Cancel to close this screen.
WPS	Click this to configure the WPS screen.
	You can transfer the wireless settings configured here (Wireless Security screen) to another wireless device that supports WPS.

7.6.7 WPS

Use this screen to add a wireless station to the network using WPS. Click **WPS** in the **Wireless Security** to open the following screen.





The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Security	Click this to go back to the Wireless Security screen.
WPS	Create a secure wireless network simply by pressing a button.
	The Router scans for a WPS-enabled device within the range and performs wireless security information synchronization.
	Note: After you click the WPS button on this screen, you have to press a similar button in the wireless station utility within 2 minutes. To add the second wireless station, you have to press these buttons on both device and the wireless station again after the first 2 minutes.
Register	Create a secure wireless network simply by entering a wireless client's PIN (Personal Identification Number) in the Router's interface and pushing this button.
	Type the same PIN number generated in the wireless station's utility. Then click Register to associate to each other and perform the wireless security information synchronization.
Exit	Click Exit to close this screen.

Table 27 Wireless Security: WPS

7.7 Status Screen in Easy Mode

In the Network Map screen, click **Status** to view read-only information about the Router.

Figure 43 Status Screen in Easy Mode

System Name :	
Time :	2000-01-01 00:29:58
WAN IP :	172.23.26.8
MAC Address :	00:0C:43:33:52:60
Firmware Version :	1.00(AACU.0)B1
Wireless Network Name (SSID) :	ZyXEL335260
Security :	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Name	This is the name of the Router in the network. You can change this in the Maintenance > General screen in Section 25.3 on page 179.
Time	This is the current system date and time.
	The date is in YYYY:MM:DD (Year-Month-Day) format. The time is in HH:MM:SS (Hour:Minutes:Seconds) format.
WAN IP	This is the IP address of the WAN port.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the Router.
Firmware	This shows the firmware version of the Router.
Version	The firmware version format shows the trunk version, model code and release number.
Wireless Network Name	This shows the SSID of the wireless network. You can configure this in the Wireless Security screen (Section 7.6.6 on page 58; Section 12.3.1.1 on page 102).
Security	This shows the wireless security used by the Router.

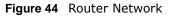
Table 28 Status Screen in Easy Mode

8

Router Mode

8.1 Overview

The Router is set to router mode by default. Routers are used to connect the local network to another network (for example, the Internet). In the figure below, the Router connects the local network (LAN1 \sim LAN4) to the Internet.





Note: The Status screen is shown after changing to the Expert mode of the Web Configurator. It varies depending on the device mode of your Router.

8.2 What You Can Do

Use the Status screen (Section 8.3 on page 63) to view read-only information about your Router.

8.3 Status Screen

Click	

to open the status screen.

KEL NBG-419N v	2		We	elcome: Admin <u>Logout</u> 🔶 Home 🥻 About 傻 B
Status			Ref	resh Interval: None 💌 Refresh Now
Device Information			System Status	
Item		Data		Data
			Item	
Host Name:		NBG-419N v2	System Up Time:	37 mins, 44 secs
Firmware Version:		1.00(AACU.0)B1 Router Mode	Current Date/Time:	2000-01-01/00:38:11
Sys OP Mode: WAN Information:		Router Mode	System Resource:	7%
- MAC Address:		00:0C:43:33:52:66	- CPU Usage:	43%
- IP Address:		172.23.26.8	- Memory Usage: System Setting:	45%
- IP Subnet Mask:		255.255.255.0	- Firewall:	Enabled
- Default Gateway:		172.23.26.254	- Bandwidth Management:	Disabled
- DHCP:		Client	- UPnP:	Enabled
LAN Information:		Chieffe	- Configuration Mode:	Expert
- MAC Address:		00:0C:43:33:52:60	Configuration mode.	Lapon
- IP Address:		192.168.1.1		
- IP Subnet Mask:		255.255.255.0	Summary	
- DHCP:		Server	BW MGMT Monitor(Details)	
WLAN Information:			DHCP Table (Details)	
- WLAN OP Mode:		Access Point Mode	Packet Statistics (Details)	
- MAC Address:		00:0C:43:33:52:60	WLAN Station Status (Details)	
- Status:		OFF		
- Name(SSID):		ZyXEL335260		
- Channel:		Auto Channel		
- Operating Channel:		Channel-11 2462MHz		
- Security Mode:		No Security		
- 802.11 Mode:		802.11b/g/n		
- WPS:		Configured		
Interface Status				
Interface	Status	Rate		
WAN	Up	100M		
LAN	Up	100M		
WLAN	Down			

The following table describes the icons shown in the **Status** screen.

ICON	DESCRIPTION
₹ <u>About</u>	Click this icon to view copyright and a link for related product information.
e Easy Mode	Click this icon to go to Easy Mode. See Chapter 7 on page 51.
	Click this to go to the Home page. See Chapter 5 on page 43.
Refresh Interval: None	Select a number of seconds or None from the drop-down list box to refresh all screen statistics automatically at the end of every time interval or to not refresh the screen statistics.

ICON	DESCRIPTION
Refresh Now	Click this button to refresh the status screen statistics.
	Click this icon to see the Status page. The information in this screen depends on the device mode you select.
(4	Click this icon to see the Monitor navigation menu.
٢	Click this icon to see the Configuration navigation menu.
2	Click this icon to see the Maintenance navigation menu.

Table 29 Status Screen Icon Key: Router Mode (continued)

The following table describes the labels shown in the **Status** screen.

Table 30Status Screen: Router Mode

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Logout	Click this at any time to exit the Web Configurator.		
Device Information			
Host Name	This is the System Name you enter in the Maintenance > General screen. It is for identification purposes.		
Firmware Version	This is the firmware version and the date created.		
Sys OP Mode	This is the device mode (Section 6.1.2 on page 49) to which the Router is set - Router Mode .		
WAN Information			
- MAC Address	This shows the WAN Ethernet adapter MAC Address of your device.		
- IP Address	This shows the WAN port's IP address.		
- IP Subnet Mask	This shows the WAN port's subnet mask.		
- Default Gateway	This shows the WAN port's gateway IP address.		
- DHCP	This shows the LAN port's DHCP role - Client or Server.		
LAN Information			
- MAC Address	This shows the LAN Ethernet adapter MAC Address of your device.		
- IP Address	This shows the LAN port's IP address.		
- IP Subnet Mask	This shows the LAN port's subnet mask.		
- DHCP	This shows the LAN port's DHCP role - Server or None.		
WLAN Information			
- WLAN OP Mode	This is the device mode (Section 6.1.2 on page 49) to which the Router's wireless LAN is set - Access Point Mode.		
- MAC Address	This shows the wireless adapter MAC Address of your device.		
- Status	This shows the current status of the Wireless LAN - ON or OFF.		
- Name (SSID)	This shows a descriptive name used to identify the Router in the wireless LAN.		
- Channel	This shows the channel number which you select manually.		
- Operating Channel	This shows the channel number which the Router is currently using over the wireless LAN.		
- Security Mode	This shows the level of wireless security the Router is using.		
- 802.11 Mode	This shows the wireless standard.		

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
- WPS	This displays Configured when the WPS has been set up.	
	This displays Unconfigured if the WPS has not been set up.	
	Click the status to display Network > Wireless LAN > WPS screen.	
System Status		
Item	This column shows the type of data the Router is recording.	
Data	This column shows the actual data recorded by the Router.	
System Up Time	This is the total time the Router has been on.	
Current Date/Time	This field displays your Router's present date and time.	
System Resource		
- CPU Usage	This displays what percentage of the Router's processing ability is currently used. When this percentage is close to 100%, the Router is running at full load, and the throughput is not going to improve anymore. If you want some applications to have more throughput, you should turn off other applications (for example, using bandwidth management.)	
- Memory Usage	This shows what percentage of the heap memory the Router is using.	
System Setting		
- Firewall	This shows whether the firewall is enabled or not.	
- Bandwidth Management	This shows whether the bandwidth management is enabled or not.	
- UPnP	This shows whether UPnP is enabled or not.	
- Configuration Mode	This shows the web configurator mode you are viewing - Expert.	
Interface Status		
Interface	This displays the Router port types. The port types are: WAN, LAN and WLAN.	
Status	For the LAN and WAN ports, this field displays Down (line is down) or Up (line is up or connected).	
	For the WLAN, it displays Up when the WLAN is enabled or Down when the WLAN is disabled.	
Rate	For the LAN ports, this displays the port speed and duplex setting or N/A when the line is disconnected.	
	For the WAN port, it displays the port speed and duplex setting if you're using Ethernet encapsulation and Idle (line (ppp) idle), Dial (starting to trigger a call) and Drop (dropping a call) if you're using PPPoE or PPTP encapsulation. This field displays N/A when the line is disconnected.	
	For the WLAN, it displays the maximum transmission rate when the WLAN is enabled and N/A when the WLAN is disabled.	
Summary		
BW MGMT Monitor	Click Details to go to the Monitor > BW MGMT Monitor screen (Section 5.4 on page 45). Use this screen to view the amount of network bandwidth that applications running in the network are using.	
DHCP Table	Click Details to go to the Monitor > DHCP Table screen (Section 5.5 on page 45). Use this screen to view current DHCP client information.	
Packet Statistics	Click Details to go to the Monitor > Packet Statistics screen (Section 5.6 on page 46). Use this screen to view port status and packet specific statistics.	
WLAN Station Status	Click Details to go to the Monitor > WLAN Station Status screen (Section 5.7 on page 47). Use this screen to view the wireless stations that are currently associated to the Router.	

 Table 30
 Status Screen: Router Mode (continued)

8.3.1 Navigation Panel

Use the sub-menus on the navigation panel to configure Router features.

Figure 46	Navigation	Panel:	Router	Mode
-----------	------------	--------	--------	------



The following table describes the sub-menus.

LINK	ТАВ	FUNCTION
Status		This screen shows the Router's general device, system and interface status information. Use this screen to access the wizard, and summary statistics tables.
MONITOR	·	
Log		Use this screen to view the list of activities recorded by your Router.
BW MGMT		Use this screen to view the amount of network bandwidth that applications running in the network are using.
DHCP Table		Use this screen to view current DHCP client information.
Packet Statistics		Use this screen to view port status and packet specific statistics.
WLAN Station Status		Use this screen to view the wireless stations that are currently associated to the Router.
CONFIGURATIO	N	
Network		

 Table 31
 Navigation Panel: Router Mode

LINK	ТАВ	FUNCTION	
Wireless LAN	General	Use this screen to configure wireless LAN.	
	MAC Filter	Use the MAC filter screen to configure the Router to block access to devices or block the devices from accessing the Router.	
	Advanced	This screen allows you to configure advanced wireless settings.	
	QoS	Use this screen to configure Wi-Fi Multimedia Quality of Service (WMM QoS). WMM QoS allows you to prioritize wireless traffic according to the delivery requirements of individual services.	
	WPS	Use this screen to configure WPS.	
	WPS Station	Use this screen to add a wireless station using WPS.	
	Scheduling	Use this screen to schedule the times the Wireless LAN is enabled.	
	WDS	Use this screen to set up Wireless Distribution System (WDS) on your Router.	
WAN	Internet Connection	This screen allows you to configure ISP parameters, WAN IP address assignment, DNS servers and the WAN MAC address.	
	Advanced	Use this screen to configure other advanced properties.	
	IGMP Snooping	Use this screen to enable IGMP snooping if you have LAN users that subscribe to multicast services.	
LAN	IP	Use this screen to configure LAN IP address and subnet mask.	
	IP Alias	Use this screen to have the Router apply IP alias to create LAN subnets.	
DHCP Server	General	Use this screen to enable the Router's DHCP server.	
	Advanced	Use this screen to assign IP addresses to specific individual computers based on their MAC addresses and to have DNS servers assigned by the DHCP server.	
NAT	General	Use this screen to enable NAT.	
	Application	Use this screen to configure servers behind the Router.	
	Advanced	Use this screen to change your Router's port triggering settings.	
DDNS	General	Use this screen to set up dynamic DNS.	
Static Route	IP Static Route	Use this screen to configure IP static routes.	
RIP		Use this screen to enable RIPv1 or RIPv2, which are LAN broadcast protocols.	
Security	•		
Firewall	General	Use this screen to activate/deactivate the firewall.	
	Services	This screen shows a summary of the firewall rules, and allows you to edit/ add a firewall rule.	
Content Filter		Use this screen to block certain web features and sites containing certain keywords in the URL.	
Management	•		
Bandwidth Management	General	Use this screen to enable bandwidth management.	
Management	Advanced	Use this screen to set the upstream bandwidth and edit a bandwidth management rule.	
	Monitor	Use this screen to view the amount of network bandwidth that applications running in the network are using.	
Remote Management	www	Use this screen to be able to access the Router from the LAN, WAN or both	
UPnP	General	Use this screen to enable UPnP on the Router.	

 Table 31
 Navigation Panel: Router Mode (continued)

LINK	ТАВ	FUNCTION
MAINTENANCE		·
General		Use this screen to view and change administrative settings such as system and domain names.
Password	Password Setup	Use this screen to change the password of your Router.
Time	Time Setting	Use this screen to change your Router's time and date.
Remote Management	www	Use this screen to configure through which interface(s) and from which IP address(es) users can use HTTP to manage the Router.
Firmware Upgrade		Use this screen to upload firmware to your Router.
Backup/ Restore		Use this screen to backup and restore the configuration or reset the factory defaults to your Router.
Reset/ Restart	Restart	This screen allows you to reboot the Router without turning the power off.
Sys OP Mode		This screen allows you to select whether your device acts as a Router or a Access Point.

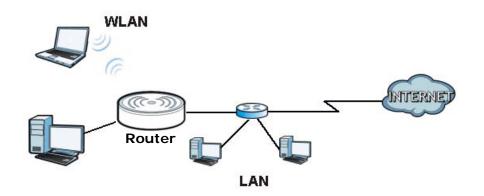
 Table 31
 Navigation Panel: Router Mode (continued)

Access Point Mode

9.1 Overview

Use your Router as an access point (AP) if you already have a router or gateway on your network. In this mode your Router bridges a wired network (LAN) and wireless LAN (WLAN) in the same subnet. See the figure below for an example.

Figure 47 Wireless Internet Access in Access Point Mode



Many screens that are available in Router mode are not available in Access Point mode, such as bandwidth management and firewall.

Note: See Chapter 11 on page 87 for an example of setting up a wireless network in Access Point mode.

9.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **Status** screen (Section 9.4 on page 72) to view read-only information about your Router.
- Use the LAN screen (Section 9.5 on page 74) to set the IP address for your Router acting as an access point.

9.3 What You Need to Know

See Chapter 11 on page 87 for a tutorial on setting up a network with the Router as an access point.

9.3.1 Setting your Router to AP Mode

- 1 Log into the Web Configurator if you haven't already. See the Quick start Guide for instructions on how to do this.
- 2 To use your Router as an access point, go to Maintenance > Sys OP Mode > General and select Access Point mode.

Figure 48 Changing to Access Point mode

Sys OP Mode
Configuration Mode
CAccess Point Mode
Note: Router: In this mode, the device is supported to connect to internet via ADSL/Cable Modem. PCs in LAN ports share the same IP to ISP through WAN Port. Access Point: In this mode, all Ethernet ports are bridged together. The device allows the wireless-equipped computer can communicate with a wired network. WISP Mode: In this mode, the device acts as a wireless client. It can connect to an existing network via an access point. Also router functions are added between the wireless WAN and the LAN.
Apply Cancel

Note: You have to log in to the Web Configurator again when you change modes. As soon as you do, your Router is already in Access Point mode.

3 When you select Access Point Mode, the following pop-up message window appears.

Figure 49 Pop up for Access Point mode



Click **OK**. The Web Configurator refreshes once the change to Access Point mode is successful.

9.3.2 Accessing the Web Configurator in Access Point Mode

Log in to the Web Configurator in Access Point mode, do the following:

- 1 Connect your computer to the LAN port of the Router.
- 2 The default IP address of the Router is "192.168.1.2". In this case, your computer must have an IP address in the range between "192.168.1.3" and "192.168.1.254".
- 3 Click Start > Run on your computer in Windows. Type "cmd" in the dialog box. Enter "ipconfig" to show your computer's IP address. If your computer's IP address is not in the correct range then see Appendix C on page 219 for information on changing your computer's IP address.

4 After you've set your computer's IP address, open a web browser such as Internet Explorer and type "192.168.1.2" as the web address in your web browser.

Note: After clicking Login, the Easy mode appears. Refer to page 51 for the Easy mode screens. Change to Expert mode to see the screens described in the sections following this.

9.3.3 Configuring your WLAN, Bandwidth Management and Maintenance Settings

The configuration of wireless, bandwidth management and maintenance settings in **Access Point** mode is the same as for **Router Mode**.

- See Chapter 12 on page 101 for information on the configuring your wireless network.
- See Chapter 22 on page 161 for information on configuring your Bandwidth Management screen.
- See Chapter 25 on page 179 to Chapter 25 on page 179 for information on configuring your Maintenance settings.

9.4 AP Mode Status Screen



Click to open the **Status** screen.

	2			Welcome: Admin I <u>Logout</u> A <u>Home</u> (About)
Status	_		G.	Refresh Interval: None Refresh I
Device Information	_		System Status	
Item		Data	Item	Data
Host Name:		NBG-419N v2	System Up Time:	1 min, 30 secs
Firmware Version:		1.00(AACU.0)B1	Current Date/Time:	2000-01-01/00:01:35
Sys OP Mode:		Access Point Mode	System Resource:	
LAN Information:			- CPU Usage:	41%
- MAC Address:		00:0C:43:33:52:60	- Memory Usage:	42%
- IP Address:		192.168.1.2	System Setting:	
- IP Subnet Mask:		255.255.255.0	- Configuration Mode:	Expert
- Default Gateway:		0.0.0.0		
- DHCP:		None		
WLAN Information:			Summary	
- WLAN OP Mode:		Access Point Mode	Packet Statistics (Details)	
- MAC Address:		00:0C:43:33:52:60	WLAN Station Status (Details)	
- Status:		OFF		
- Name(SSID):		ZyXEL335260		
- Channel:		Auto Channel		
- Operating Channel:		Channel-06 2437MHz		
- Security Mode:		No Security		
- 802.11 Mode:		802.11b/g/n		
- WPS:		Configured		

The following table describes the labels shown in the Status screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Logout	Click this at any time to exit the Web Configurator.		
Device Information			
Host Name	This is the System Name you enter in the Maintenance > General screen. It is for identification purposes.		
Firmware Version	This is the firmware version and the date created.		
Sys OP Mode	This is the device mode (Section 6.1.2 on page 49) to which the Router is set - Acces Point Mode.		
LAN Information			
- MAC Address	This shows the LAN Ethernet adapter MAC Address of your device.		
- IP Address	This shows the LAN port's IP address.		
- IP Subnet Mask	This shows the LAN port's subnet mask.		
- DHCP	This shows the LAN port's DHCP role - Server, Client or None.		
WLAN Information			

Table 32 Status Screen: Access Point Mode

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
- WLAN OP Mode	This is the device mode (Section 6.1.2 on page 49) to which the Router's wireless LAN is set - Access Point Mode.		
- MAC Address	This shows the wireless adapter MAC Address of your device.		
- Status	This shows the current status of the Wireless LAN - ON or OFF.		
- Name (SSID)	This shows a descriptive name used to identify the Router in the wireless LAN.		
- Channel	This shows the channel number which you select manually.		
- Operating Channel	This shows the channel number which the Router is currently using over the wireless LAN.		
- Security Mode	This shows the level of wireless security the Router is using.		
- 802.11 Mode	This shows the wireless standard.		
- WPS	This displays Configured when the WPS has been set up.		
	This displays Unconfigured if the WPS has not been set up.		
	Click the status to display Network > Wireless LAN > WPS screen.		
System Status			
Item	This column shows the type of data the Router is recording.		
Data	This column shows the actual data recorded by the Router.		
System Up Time	This is the total time the Router has been on.		
Current Date/Time	This field displays your Router's present date and time.		
System Resource			
- CPU Usage	This displays what percentage of the Router's processing ability is currently used. When this percentage is close to 100%, the Router is running at full load, and the throughput is not going to improve anymore. If you want some applications to have more throughput, you should turn off other applications (for example, using bandwidth management.		
- Memory Usage	This shows what percentage of the heap memory the Router is using.		
System Setting			
- Configuration Mode	This shows the web configurator mode you are viewing - Expert.		
Interface Status			
Interface	This displays the Router port types. The port types are: LAN and WLAN.		
Status	For the LAN and WAN ports, this field displays Down (line is down) or Up (line is up or connected).		
	For the WLAN, it displays Up when the WLAN is enabled or Down when the WLAN is disabled.		
Rate	For the LAN ports, this displays the port speed and duplex setting or N/A when the line is disconnected.		
	For the WAN port, it displays the port speed and duplex setting if you're using Ethernet encapsulation and Idle (line (ppp) idle), Dial (starting to trigger a call) and Drop (dropping a call) if you're using PPPoE or PPTP encapsulation. This field displays N/A when the line is disconnected.		
	For the WLAN, it displays the maximum transmission rate when the WLAN is enabled and N/A when the WLAN is disabled.		
Summary			
Packet Statistics	Click Details to go to the Monitor > Packet Statistics screen (Section 5.6 on page 46). Use this screen to view port status and packet specific statistics.		
WLAN Station Status	Click Details to go to the Monitor > WLAN Station Status screen (Section 5.7 on page 47). Use this screen to view the wireless stations that are currently associated to the Router		

 Table 32
 Status Screen: Access Point Mode (continued)

9.4.0.1 Navigation Panel

Use the menu in the navigation panel to configure Router features in Access Point mode.

The following screen and table show the features you can configure in Access Point mode.

Figure 51 Menu: Access Point Mode



Refer to Table 31 on page 66 for descriptions of the labels shown in the Navigation panel.

9.5 LAN Screen

Use this section to configure your LAN settings while in Access Point mode.

Click **Network** > **LAN** to see the screen below.

Note: If you change the IP address of the Router in the screen below, you will need to log into the Router again using the new IP address.

Figure 52 Network > LAN > IP	
IP IP Alias	
LAN TCP/IP C Get from DHCP Server Use Defined LAN IP Address IP Address : IP Subnet Mask : Gateway IP Address :	192.168.1.2 255.255.255.0
DNS Assignment First DNS Server : Second DNS Server :	From ISP
	Apply Reset

The table below describes the labels in the screen.

Table 33Network > LAN > IP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Get from DHCP	Click this to deploy the Router as an access point in the network.
Server	When you enable this, the Router gets its IP address from the network's DHCP server (for example, your ISP). Users connected to the Router can now access the network (i.e., the Internet if the IP address is given by the ISP).
	The Web Configurator may no longer be accessible unless you know the IP address assigned by the DHCP server to the Router. You need to reset the Router to be able to access the Web Configurator again (see Section 25.7 on page 184 for details on how to reset the Router).
	Also when you select this, you cannot enter an IP address for your Router in the field below.
Use Defined LAN IP Address	Click this if you want to specify the IP address of your Router. Or if your ISP or network administrator gave you a static IP address to access the network or the Internet.
IP Address	Type the IP address in dotted decimal notation. The default setting is 192.168.1.2. If you change the IP address you will have to log in again with the new IP address.
IP Subnet Mask	The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your Router will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IP address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use the subnet mask computed by the Router.
Gateway IP Address	Enter a Gateway IP Address (if your ISP or network administrator gave you one) in this field.
DNS Assignment	
First DNS Server	Select From ISP if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the Router's WAN IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the ISP assigns.
Second DNS Server	Select User-Defined if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose User-Defined , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . If you set a second choice to User-Defined , and enter the same IP address, the second User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply .
	Select None if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a computer in order to access it.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Router.
Reset	Click Reset to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

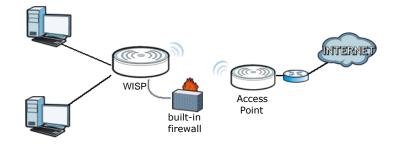
WISP Mode

10.1 Overview

Your Router can act as a wireless client. In wireless client mode, it can connect to an existing network via an access point. Use this mode if you already have an access point or router in your network.

In the example below, one Router (**A**) is configured as a wireless client and another is used as an access point (**B**). The wireless client has two clients that need to connect to the Internet. The Router wirelessly connects to the available access point (**B**).





After the Router and the access point connect, the Router acquires its WAN IP address from the access point. The clients of the Router can now surf the Internet.

10.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **Status** screen (Section 10.4 on page 78) to view read-only information about your Router.
- Use the LAN screen (Chapter 14 on page 131) to set the IP address for your Router acting as an access point.
- Use the Wireless LAN screen (Section 10.5 on page 80) to associate your Router (acting as a wireless client) with an existing access point.

10.3 What You Need to Know

With the exception of the LAN screen, the Monitor, Configuration and Maintainance screens in WISP mode are similar to the ones in Router Mode. See Chapter 12 on page 101 through Chapter 25 on page 187 of this User's Guide.

10.3.1 Setting your Router to WISP Mode

- 1 Log into the Web Configurator if you haven't already. See the Quick start Guide for instructions on how to do this.
- 2 To set your Router to AP Mode, go to Maintenance > Sys OP Mode > General and select WISP Mode.

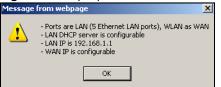
Figure 54 Changing to WISP mode

Sys OP Mode
Configuration Mode CRouter Mode CAccess Point Mode CWISP Mode
Note: Router: In this mode, the device is supported to connect to internet via ADSL/Cable Modem. PCs in LAN ports share the same IP to ISP through WAN Port. Access Point: In this mode, all Ethernet ports are bridged together. The device allows the wireless-equipped computer can communicate with a wired network. WISP Mode: In this mode, the device acts as a wireless client. It can connect to an existing network via an access point. Also router functions are added between the wireless WAN and the LAN.
Apply Cancel

Note: You have to log in to the Web Configurator again when you change modes.As soon as you do, your Router is already in WISP mode.

3 When you select WISP Mode, the following pop-up message window appears.

Figure 55 Pop up window for WISP mode



Click **OK**. The Web Configurator refreshes once the change to WISP mode is successful.

10.3.2 Accessing the Web Configurator in WISP Mode

To login to Web Configurator in WISP mode, do the following:

- 1 Connect your computer to the LAN port of the Router.
- 2 The default IP address of the Router is "192.168.1.1". If you did not change this, you can use the same IP address in WISP mode. Open a web browser such as Internet Explorer and type "192.168.1.1" as the web address in your web browser.

If you changed the IP address of your Router while in Router Mode, use this IP address in WISP mode. The WISP mode IP address is always the same as the Router mode IP address.

Note: After clicking Login, the Easy mode appears. Refer to Section on page 51 for the Easy mode screens. Click Expert mode to see the screens described in the sections following this.

10.4 WISP Mode Status Screen



Click to open the status screen.

Figure 56 Status: WISP Mode

Status			l l	Refresh Interval: None	Refresh N
Device Information			System Status		
Item		Data	Item	Data	
Host Name:		NBG-419N v2	System Up Time:		, 17 secs
Firmware Version:		1.00(AACU.0)B1	Current Date/Time:		1-01/00:03:26
Sys OP Mode:		WISP Mode	System Resource:	20004	1-01700.03.20
WAN Information:		THOI MODE	- CPU Usage:		41%
- MAC Address:		00:0C:43:33:52:60	- Memory Usage:		41%
- IP Address:		0.0.0.0	System Setting:		
- IP Subnet Mask:		0.0.0.0	- Firewall:	Enable	d
- Default Gateway:		0.0.0.0	- Bandwidth Management:	Disabl	ed
- DHCP:		Client	- UPnP:	Enable	d
LAN Information:			- Configuration Mode:	Expert	
- MAC Address:		00:0C:43:33:52:60			
- IP Address:		192.168.1.1			
- IP Subnet Mask:		255.255.255.0	Summary		
- DHCP:		Server	BW MGMT Monitor(Details)		
WLAN Information:			DHCP Table (Details)		
- WLAN OP Mode:		Wireless Client Mode	Packet Statistics (Details)		
- MAC Address:		00:0C:43:33:52:60			
- Status:		OFF			
- Name(SSID):					
- Connect Status:		Disassociated	-		
- Security Mode:		No Security			
Interface Status					
	0.1	12.1.0			
Interface	Status	Rate			

The following table describes the labels shown in the Status screen.

Table 34 Status Screen: WISP Mode			
LABEL DESCRIPTION			
Logout	Click this at any time to exit the Web Configurator.		
Device Information			
Host Name	This is the System Name you enter in the Maintenance > General screen. It is for identification purposes.		
Firmware Version This is the firmware version and the date created.			
Sys OP Mode	This is the device mode (Section 6.1.2 on page 49) to which the Router is set - WISP Mode .		
WAN Information			

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
- MAC Address	This shows the WAN Ethernet adapter MAC Address of your device.		
- IP Address	This shows the WAN port's IP address.		
- IP Subnet Mask	This shows the WAN port's subnet mask.		
- Default Gateway	This shows the WAN port's gateway IP address.		
- DHCP	This shows the LAN port's DHCP role - Client or Server.		
LAN Information			
- MAC Address	This shows the LAN Ethernet adapter MAC Address of your device.		
- IP Address	This shows the LAN port's IP address.		
- IP Subnet Mask	This shows the LAN port's subnet mask.		
- DHCP	This shows the LAN port's DHCP role - Server or None.		
WLAN Information			
- WLAN OP Mode	This is the device mode (Section 6.1.2 on page 49) to which the Router's wireless LAN is set - Access Point Mode.		
- MAC Address	This shows the wireless adapter MAC Address of your device.		
- Status	This shows the current status of the Wireless LAN - ON or OFF.		
- Name (SSID)	This shows a descriptive name used to identify the Router in the wireless LAN.		
- Connect Status	This shows whether or not the Router has successfully associated with an access point - Connected or Disassociated .		
- Security Mode	This shows the level of wireless security the Router is using.		
- 802.11 Mode	This shows the wireless standard.		
System Status			
Item	This column shows the type of data the Router is recording.		
Data	This column shows the actual data recorded by the Router.		
System Up Time	This is the total time the Router has been on.		
Current Date/Time	This field displays your Router's present date and time.		
System Resource			
- CPU Usage	This displays what percentage of the Router's processing ability is currently used. When this percentage is close to 100%, the Router is running at full load, and the throughput is not going to improve anymore. If you want some applications to have more throughput, you should turn off other applications (for example, using bandwidth management.		
- Memory Usage	This shows what percentage of the heap memory the Router is using.		
System Setting			
- Firewall	This shows whether the firewall is enabled or not.		
- Bandwidth Management	This shows whether the bandwidth management is enabled or not.		
- UPnP	This shows whether UPnP is enabled or not.		
- Configuration Mode	This shows the web configurator mode you are viewing - Expert.		
Interface Status			
Interface	This displays the Router port types. The port types are: LAN and WLAN.		
Status	For the LAN and WAN ports, this field displays Down (line is down) or Up (line is up or connected).		
	For the WLAN, it displays Up when the WLAN is enabled or Down when the WLAN is disabled.		

 Table 34
 Status Screen: WISP Mode (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rate	For the LAN ports, this displays the port speed and duplex setting or $\mathbf{N/A}$ when the line is disconnected.
	For the WAN port, it displays the port speed and duplex setting if you're using Ethernet encapsulation and Idle (line (ppp) idle), Dial (starting to trigger a call) and Drop (dropping a call) if you're using PPPoE or PPTP encapsulation. This field displays N/A when the line is disconnected.
	For the WLAN, it displays the maximum transmission rate when the WLAN is enabled and $N \not$ A when the WLAN is disabled.
Summary	
BW MGMT Monitor	Click Details to go to the Monitor > BW MGMT Monitor screen (Section 5.4 on page 45). Use this screen to view the amount of network bandwidth that applications running in the network are using.
DHCP Table	Click Details to go to the Monitor > DHCP Table screen (Section 5.5 on page 45). Use this screen to view current DHCP client information.
Packet Statistics	Click Details to go to the Monitor > Packet Statistics screen (Section 5.6 on page 46). Use this screen to view port status and packet specific statistics.

 Table 34
 Status Screen: WISP Mode (continued)

10.5 Wireless LAN General Screen

Use this screen to configure the wireless LAN settings of your Router. Go to **Configuration** > **Wireless LAN** > **General** to open the following screen.

Figure 57 WISP Mode: LAN > General Screen

General Advanced Site Survey	
Wireless Setup Network Name(SSID)	
Security	
Security Mode	No Security
	Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Wireless Setup			
Network NameEnter the name of the access point to which you are connecting.(SSID)			
Security	Security		
Security Mode	Select the security mode of the access point to which you want to connect.		
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.		
Reset	Click Reset to reload the previous configuration for this screen.		

Table 35	WISP Mode: LAN > General Screen	

10.5.0.1 No Security

Use this screen if the access point to which you want to connect does not use encryption.

Figure 58 No Security (WISP)

General	Advanced	Site Survey	
1			
Wirele	ss Setup		
Net	work Name(SS	ID)	
Securi	ty		
Ser	curity Mode		No Security
			Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 36	No	Security	(WISP)
----------	----	----------	--------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
Wireless Setup		
Network Name (SSID)	Enter the name of the access point to which you are connecting.	
Security		
Security Mode	Select No Security in this field.	
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.	
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.	

10.5.1 Static WEP

Use this screen if the access point to which you want to connect to uses WEP security mode.

eral Advanced Site Survey		
fireless Setup		
Network Name(SSID)		
ecurity		
Security Mode		Static WEP
PassPhrase		Generate
WEP Encryption		64-bits
Authentication Method		Open 💌
Note:		
64-bit WEP: Enter 5 ASCII of	characters or 10 hexad	lecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).
		adecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4
		t wireless data transmission.)
(concertaine fills way up an	C ASCIL © F	
Key 1		
C Key 2		
C Key 3		
C Key 4		

The following table describes the labels in this screen..

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Setup	
Network Name (SSID)	Enter the name of the access point to which you are connecting.
Security	
Security Mode	Select Static WEP to enable data encryption.
PassPhrase	Enter a Passphrase (up to 26 printable characters) and click Generate.
	A passphrase functions like a password. In WEP security mode, it is further converted by the Router into a complicated string that is referred to as the "key". This key is requested from all devices wishing to connect to a wireless network.
WEP Encryption	Select 64-bit WEP or 128-bit WEP.
	This dictates the length of the security key that the network is going to use.
Authentication	Select Auto or Shared Key from the drop-down list box.
Method	This field specifies whether the wireless clients have to provide the WEP key to login to the wireless client. Keep this setting at Auto unless you want to force a key verification before communication between the wireless client and the Router occurs.
	Select Shared Key to force the clients to provide the WEP key prior to communication.
ASCII	Select this option in order to enter ASCII characters as WEP key.

Table 37 WEP (WISP)

Table 37 WEP (WISP) (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Hex	Select this option in order to enter hexadecimal characters as a WEP key.
	The preceding "0x", that identifies a hexadecimal key, is entered automatically.
Key 1 to Key 4The WEP keys are used to encrypt data. Both the Router and the wireless stati use the same WEP key for data transmission.	
	If you chose 64-bit WEP , then enter any 5 ASCII characters or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F").
	If you chose 128-bit WEP , then enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F").
	You must configure at least one key, only one key can be activated at any one time. The default key is key 1.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

10.5.2 WPA(2)-PSK

Use this screen if the access point to which you want to connect uses WPA(2)-PSK security mode.

General	Advanced	Site Survey	
Wirele	ss Setup		
Net	twork Name(SS	SID)	
Securi	ty		
Se	curity Mode		WPA2-PSK
End	cryption Type		TKIP CAES
Pre	-Shared Key		
			Apply Cancel

Figure 60 WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK (WISP)

The following table describes the labels in this screen. .

Table 38	WPA-PS	K/WPA2-PSK	(WISP)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Setup	
Network Name (SSID)	Enter the name of the access point to which you are connecting.
Security	
Encryption Type	Select the type of wireless encryption employed by the access point to which you want to connect.
Pre-Shared Key	WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK uses a simple common password for authentication.
	Type the pre-shared key employed by the access point to which you want to connect.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

10.5.3 Advance Screen

Use this screen to enable the power saving mode of your Router. Go to **Configuration > Wireless LAN** to open the following screen.

Figure 61 Configuration > Wireless LAN > Advance Screen (WISP)

General Advanced	Site Survey		
Wireless Advanced	Setup		
Power Saving Mod	e	CAM (Const	antly Awake Mode) C Power Saving Mode
RTS Threshold		2346	(256 ~ 2346)
Fragement Thresho	ld	2346	(256 ~ 2346)
		Apply	Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Power Saving Mode	Select CAM (Constantly Awake Mode) if you do not want your Router to go to "sleep" when no wireless activity is detected in the Wireless LAN.
	Select Power Saving Mode if you want the Router to go to sleep when no wireless connection is needed for a period of time. This means the Router consumes less electrical power.
RTS Threshold	This is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent in a wireless network before the AP fragments the packet into smaller data frames.
Fragment Threshold	This value controls how often wireless clients must get permission to send information to the AP. The lower the value, the more often the wireless clients must get permission. If this value is greater than the fragmentation threshold value, then wireless clients never have to get permission to send information to the AP.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

Table 39 Configuration > Wireless LAN > Advance Screen (WISP)

10.5.4 Site Survey Screen

Use this screen to scan for and connect to a wireless network automatically. Go to **Configuration** > **Site Survey** to open the following screen.

Site Survey						
SSID	BSSID	Signal Strength	Channel	station encryp	station auth	Network Type
ZyXEL_Benny	02:13:49:11:66:8C	34%	1	TKIPAES	WPA1PSKWPA2PSK	In
zy_penpen	42:4A:03:D9:F9:7C	76%	1	Not Use	NONE	In
ZyXEL_668C	02:13:49:78:16:AF	5%	1	TKIPAES	WPA1PSKWPA2PSK	In
ZyXEL123456	00:13:47:12:34:56	5%	1	Not Use	NONE	In
3205_Evo2	00:23:F8:28:AD:C9	0%	11	WEP	Unknown	In
Zy_private_H99HYK	40:4A:04:12:0A:5C	55%	11	AES	WPA2PSK	In
TELUS002	02:10:18:01:00:02	5%	11	TKIPAES	WPA1PSKWPA2PSK	In

Figure 62 Configuration > Wireless LAN > Site Survey (WISP)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION				
Station Site Surve	Station Site Survey				
#	Select a wireless device and click Add Profile to open a configuration screen where you can add the selected wireless device to a profile and then enable it.				
SSID	This displays the SSID of the wireless device.				
	indicates the wireless device is added to an activated profile and the Router is connecting to it.				
BSSID	This displays the MAC address of the wireless device.				
Signal Strength	This displays the strength of the wireless signal. The signal strength mainly depends on th antenna output power and the distance between your Router and this device.				
Channel	This displays the channel number used by this wireless device.				
station encryp	This displays the data encryption method used by this wireless device.				
station auth	This displays the authentication method used by this wireless device.				
Network Type	This displays the network type (In (Infrastructure) or Ad (Ad Hoc) of this wireless device.				
Rescan	Click this button to search for available wireless devices within transmission range and update this table.				
Setting	Select a wireless device and click this button to add it to a profile.				

 Table 40
 Configuration > Wireless LAN > Site Survey (WISP)

Tutorials

11.1 Overview

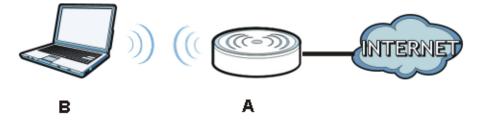
This chapter provides tutorials for your Router as follows:

- Connecting to the Internet from an Access Point
- Configuring Wireless Security Using WPS
- Enabling and Configuring Wireless Security (No WPS)
- Connecting to USB Storage with the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility
- Automatically Connecting to a USB Printer

11.2 Connecting to the Internet from an Access Point

This section gives you an example of how to set up an access point (AP) and wireless client (a notebook (B), in this example) for wireless communication. B can access the Internet through the access point wirelessly.

Figure 63 Wireless Access Point Connection to the Internet



11.3 Configuring Wireless Security Using WPS

This section gives you an example of how to set up wireless network using WPS. This example uses the Router as the AP and NWD210N as the wireless client which connects to a notebook.

Note: The wireless client must be a WPS-aware device (for example, a WPS USB adapter or PCI card).

There are two WPS methods for creating a secure connection. This tutorial shows you how to do both.

- **Push Button Configuration (PBC)** create a secure wireless network simply by pressing a button. See Section 11.3.1 on page 88.This is the easier method.
- **PIN Configuration** create a secure wireless network simply by entering a wireless client's PIN (Personal Identification Number) in the Router's interface. See Section 11.3.2 on page 89. This is the more secure method, since one device can authenticate the other.

11.3.1 Push Button Configuration (PBC)

- 1 Make sure that your Router is turned on and that it is within range of your computer.
- 2 Make sure that you have installed the wireless client (this example uses the NWD210N) driver and utility in your notebook.
- 3 In the wireless client utility, find the WPS settings. Enable WPS and press the WPS button (Start or WPS button)
- 4 Log into Router's Web Configurator and press the Push Button button in the Network > Wireless Client > WPS Station screen.
 - Note: Your Router has a WPS button located on its panel, as well as a WPS button in its configuration utility. Both buttons have exactly the same function; you can use one or the other.
 - Note: It doesn't matter which button is pressed first. You must press the second button within two minutes of pressing the first one.

The Router sends the proper configuration settings to the wireless client. This may take up to two minutes. Then the wireless client is able to communicate with the Router securely.

The following figure shows you an example to set up wireless network and security by pressing a button on both Router and wireless client (the NWD210N in this example).

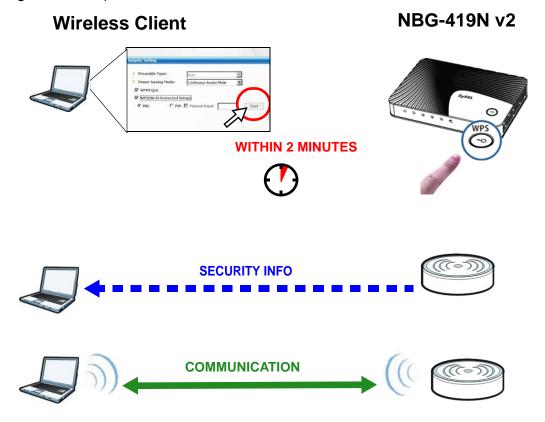


Figure 64 Example WPS Process: PBC Method

11.3.2 PIN Configuration

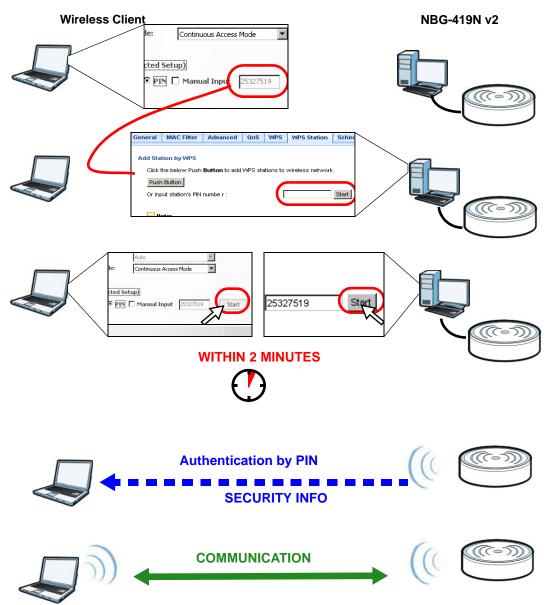
When you use the PIN configuration method, you need to use both Router's configuration interface and the client's utilities.

- 1 Launch your wireless client's configuration utility. Go to the WPS settings and select the PIN method to get a PIN number.
- 2 Enter the PIN number to the PIN field in the Network > Wireless LAN > WPS Station screen on the Router.
- 3 Click **Start** buttons (or button next to the PIN field) on both the wireless client utility screen and the Router's **WPS Station** screen within two minutes.

The Router authenticates the wireless client and sends the proper configuration settings to the wireless client. This may take up to two minutes. Then the wireless client is able to communicate with the Router securely.

The following figure shows you the example to set up wireless network and security on Router and wireless client (ex. NWD210N in this example) by using PIN method.





11.4 Enabling and Configuring Wireless Security (No WPS)

This example shows you how to configure wireless security settings with the following parameters on your Router.

SSID	SSID_Example3
Channel	6
Security WPA-PSK	
	(Pre-Shared Key: ThisismyWPA-PSKpre-sharedkey)

Follow the steps below to configure the wireless settings on your Router.

The instructions require that your hardware is connected (see the Quick Start Guide) and you are logged into the Web Configurator through your LAN connection (see Section 4.2 on page 37).

- 1 Open the **Wireless LAN > General** screen in the AP's Web Configurator.
- 2 Make sure the **Enable Wireless LAN** check box is selected.
- 3 Enter **SSID_Example3** as the SSID and select a channel.
- 4 Set security mode to WPA-PSK and enter ThisismyWPA-PSKpre-sharedkey in the Pre-Shared Key field. Click Apply.

Figure	Figure 66 Tutorial: Network > Wireless LAN > General									
General	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS	WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling	WDS			
Wireless Setup Wireless LAN : Network Name(SSID) :				Channel-0	SSID_Example3					
	rating Channel :				Channel-U6	Channel-06 2437MHz				
Security										
Security Mode					WPA-PSK					
Pre-	Shared Key			ThisismyW	ThisismyWPA-PSKpre-sharedkey					
Grou	up Key Update T	ïmer			3600 ៖	seconds				
					Apply	Reset				

5 Open the Status screen. Verify your wireless and wireless security settings under **Device** Information and check if the WLAN connection is up under Interface Status.

- MAC Address:	(00:0C:43:30:52:28	
- IP Address:		92.168.1.1	
- IP Subnet Mask:	1	\$55.255.255.0	Summary
- DHCP:		Server	BW MGMT Monitor(Details)
WLAN Information:			DHCP Table (Details)
- WLAN OP Mode:	,	Access Point Mode	Packet Statistics (Details)
- MAC Address:		00:00:43:30:52:28	WLAN Station Status (Details)
- Status:		N	
- Name(SSID):	:	SSID_Example3	
- Channel:		Channel-06 2437MHz	
- Operating Channel:		Channel-06 2437MHz	
- Security Mode:	N N	VPA-PSK	
802.11 Mode:		302.11b/g/n	
- WPS:	9	Configured	
Interface Status			
Interface	Status	Rate	
WAN	Up	100M	
Levi		1000	
	Up	300M	

Figure 67 Tutorial: Checking Wireless Settings

11.4.1 Configure Your Notebook

Note: We use the ZyXEL M-302 wireless adapter utility screens as an example for the wireless client. The screens may vary for different models.

- 1 The Router supports IEEE 802.11b, IEEE 802.11g and IEEE 802.11n wireless clients. Make sure that your notebook or computer's wireless adapter supports one of these standards.
- 2 Wireless adapters come with software sometimes called a "utility" that you install on your computer. See your wireless adapter's User's Guide for information on how to do that.
- 3 After you've installed the utility, open it. If you cannot see your utility's icon on your screen, go to Start > Programs and click on your utility in the list of programs that appears. The utility displays a list of APs within range, as shown in the example screen below.
- 4 Select SSID_Example3 and click Connect.

Figure 68 Connecting a Wireless Client to a Wireless Network t

	SSID	Channel	Signal 🗹 🔺	Network Type: Infrastructure
	ZyXEL_MIS	6	62%	Network Mode: 802.11g
) m	ZyXEL_YZU	6	62%	Channel: 6
	ZyXEL_test	6	60%	Security: WPA-PSK
مسی	SSID_Example3	6	56%	MAC Address: 00:A0:C5:CD:1F:64
	CPE_5257_00	11	54%	Surveyed at: 11:46:38
			-	

5 Select WPA-PSK and type the security key in the following screen. Click **Next**.

Figure 69 Security Settings

Encryption Type:	WPA-PSK	
Pre-Shared Key:	ThisismyWPA-PSKpre-sharedkey	

6 The Confirm Save window appears. Check your settings and click Save to continue.

igure 70	Confirm Save
-	

onfirm Save		
Network Name(SSID):	SSID_Example3	
Network Type:	Infrastructure	
Network Mode:	802.11b/g	
> Channel:	Auto	
Security:	WPA-PSK	
		Back Save Exit
		Dack Save CAIL

7 Check the status of your wireless connection in the screen below. If your wireless connection is weak or you have no connection, see the Troubleshooting section of this User's Guide.

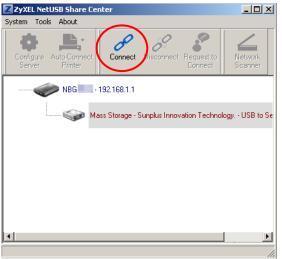
Nireless Network Status	Statistics		
Profile Name:	Transmit Rate: 2 Kbps		
Network Name(SSID): SSID_Example3	Receive Rate: 0 Kbps		
AP MAC Address: 00:A0:C5:CD:1F:64	Authentication: None		
Network Type: Infrastructure	Network Mode: 802.11g		
Transmission Rate: 18 Mbps	Total Transmit: 46		
Security: WPA-PSK	Total Receive: 3		
Channel: 6	Link Quality: -68 dBm		
	Trend Chart		

If your connection is successful, open your Internet browser and enter http://www.zyxel.com or the URL of any other web site in the address bar. If you are able to access the web site, your wireless connection is successfully configured.

11.5 Connecting to USB Storage with the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility

This tutorial shows you how to connect to a USB device over your Router network by using the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility.

- 1 Install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility on the computer to which you want to connect the USB device. See Chapter 2 on page 20 for details on the installation.
- 2 Connect a USB device to one of the USB ports of the Router.
- **3** Open the **ZyXEL NetUSB Sharing Center Utility** on your computer. The name of the USB device automatically shows in the Utility screen.
- 4 Click on the USB device's name. Then click **Connect**.



5 The device mounts on your system.

🗜 My Computer							
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help							
🕞 Back 🔻 🔗 👻 🏂 Search 🎼 Folders 🔛 🕇							
Address 💡 My Computer							
	Name	Туре					
System Tasks	Hard Disk Drives						
Other Places	ZYXEL (C:) ZvDATA (D:) MATION HQT (F:) Devices with Removable Storage	Local Disk Local Disk Local Disk					
	43315 Floppy (A:)	3½-Inch Floppy Disk CD Drive					
Details	DVD Drive (E:)	CD Drive					

11.5.1 Multiple Connections to the USB Device

The Utility supports one connection to the Router's USB device at a time. If more than one computer want to connect to the USB device, follow the steps below:

- 1 After the first computer (A) finishes using the USB device, click **Disconnect** on the Utilty to unmount it.
- 2 Click **Connect** on the Utility of the second computer (**B**) to mount the USB device on **B**.
- **3** If **A** does not disconnect from the USB device, **B** cannot use it. **B** can click the **Request to Connect** button to request **A** to disconnect. B will see the following message on its Utility:



4 A will receive the following message on its Utility screen.



- 5 A should click **Accept** to disconnect to the USB device.
- 6 After **A** is disconnected from USB device, **B** will see the following message on its Utility. Now **B** can access the USB device.



Note: If your computer is connected to a USB device, you must disconnect it and use **Exit** to close the Utility. If you use the X on the Utility screen, it only closes the Utility window. The Utility is still connected. Do not exit the Utility until the USB device is disconnected via the Utility or until you receive a request to disconnect. See Chapter 2 on page 20 for details on how to exit the Utility.

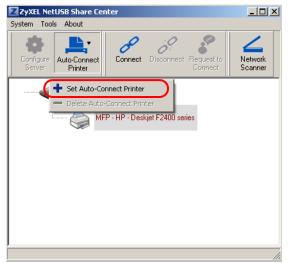
11.6 Automatically Connecting to a USB Printer

Your computer can connect to a shared USB printer by using the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility. This tutorial shows you how to set your computer to automatically connect to a shared USB printer over your Router network each time you log into your computer.

- 1 Install the ZyXEL NetUSB Share Center Utility to your computer. See Chapter 2 on page 20 for details on the installation.
- 2 Connect a USB printer to one of the USB ports of the Router.
- **3** Open the **ZyXEL NetUSB Sharing Center Utility** on your computer. The name of the USB printer automatically shows in the Utility screen.
- 4 Click on the printer name. Then click **Connect**. Your computer will search for the printer driver. You may be prompted to install the driver. Follow the driver's installation steps to finish installing.



5 Click the Auto-Connect Printer menu and select Set Auto-Connect Printer from the menu.



6 Select the USB printer you want to connect to and click Apply.

Z Add to Auto-Connect Printer List	
< Installed Printer List >	
Printer Name	
MP Deskjet F2400 series recommended	
- Anniu - C	Cancel
Apply	ancei

- 7 Now your computer can automatically connect to this shared USB printer over your Router network each time you log into your computer. The printer will be automatically added to your printer list.
- 8 The Utility supports one connection to the Router's USB device at a time. If more than one computer is using the printer and are all auto-connected to the USB device, the second computer automatically starts printing after the first computer finishes its printing task.

PART II Technical Reference

Wireless LAN

12.1 Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure the wireless network settings in your Router. See the appendices for more detailed information about wireless networks.

The following figure provides an example of a wireless network.

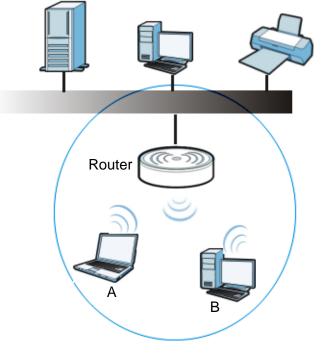


Figure 72 Example of a Wireless Network

The wireless network is the part in the blue circle. In this wireless network, devices A and B are called wireless clients. The wireless clients use the access point (AP) to interact with other devices (such as the printer) or with the Internet. Your Router is the AP.

12.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **General** screen (Section 12.4 on page 104) to enable the Wireless LAN, enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode.
- Use the **MAC Filter** screen (Section 12.5 on page 108) to allow or deny wireless stations based on their MAC addresses from connecting to the Router.

- Use the **Advanced** screen (Section 12.6 on page 109) to allow wireless advanced features, such as intra-BSS networking and set the RTS/CTS Threshold.
- Use the **QoS** screen (Section 12.7 on page 111) to set priority levels to services, such as e-mail, VoIP, chat, and so on.
- Use the **WPS** screen (Section 12.8 on page 112) to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually.
- Use the WPS Station screen (Section 12.9 on page 113) to add a wireless station using WPS.
- Use the **Scheduling** screen (Section 12.10 on page 114) to set the times your wireless LAN is turned on and off.
- Use the **WDS** screen (Section 12.11 on page 115) to configure Wireless Distribution System on your Router.

12.3 What You Should Know

Every wireless network must follow these basic guidelines.

• Every wireless client in the same wireless network must use the same SSID.

The SSID is the name of the wireless network. It stands for Service Set IDentity.

• If two wireless networks overlap, they should use different channels.

Like radio stations or television channels, each wireless network uses a specific channel, or frequency, to send and receive information.

• Every wireless client in the same wireless network must use security compatible with the AP. Security stops unauthorized devices from using the wireless network. It can also protect the information that is sent in the wireless network.

12.3.1 Wireless Security Overview

The following sections introduce different types of wireless security you can set up in the wireless network.

12.3.1.1 SSID

Normally, the AP acts like a beacon and regularly broadcasts the SSID in the area. You can hide the SSID instead, in which case the AP does not broadcast the SSID. In addition, you should change the default SSID to something that is difficult to guess.

This type of security is fairly weak, however, because there are ways for unauthorized devices to get the SSID. In addition, unauthorized devices can still see the information that is sent in the wireless network.

12.3.1.2 MAC Address Filter

Every wireless client has a unique identification number, called a MAC address.¹ A MAC address is usually written using twelve hexadecimal characters²; for example, 00A0C5000002 or

^{1.} Some wireless devices, such as scanners, can detect wireless networks but cannot use wireless networks. These kinds of wireless devices might not have MAC addresses.

^{2.} Hexadecimal characters are 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, B, C, D, E, and F.

00:A0:C5:00:00:02. To get the MAC address for each wireless client, see the appropriate User's Guide or other documentation.

You can use the MAC address filter to tell the AP which wireless clients are allowed or not allowed to use the wireless network. If a wireless client is allowed to use the wireless network, it still has to have the correct settings (SSID, channel, and security). If a wireless client is not allowed to use the wireless network, it does not matter if it has the correct settings.

This type of security does not protect the information that is sent in the wireless network. Furthermore, there are ways for unauthorized devices to get the MAC address of an authorized wireless client. Then, they can use that MAC address to use the wireless network.

12.3.1.3 Encryption

Wireless networks can use encryption to protect the information that is sent in the wireless network. Encryption is like a secret code. If you do not know the secret code, you cannot understand the message.

The types of encryption you can choose depend on the type of user authentication.

	NO AUTHENTICATION		
Weakest	No Security		
	WEP		
↓	WPA-PSK		
Strongest	WPA2-PSK		

 Table 41
 Types of Encryption for Each Type of Authentication

Usually, you should set up the strongest encryption that every wireless client in the wireless network supports. Suppose the wireless network has two wireless clients. Device A only supports WEP, and device B supports WEP and WPA-PSK. Therefore, you should set up **WEP** in the wireless network.

Note: It is recommended that wireless networks use **WPA-PSK** or stronger encryption. IEEE 802.1x and WEP encryption are better than none at all, but it is still possible for unauthorized devices to figure out the original information pretty quickly.

When you select **WPA2-PSK** in your Router, you can also select an option (**WPA Compatible**) to support WPA as well. In this case, if some wireless clients support WPA and some support WPA2, you should set up **WPA2-PSK** (depending on the type of wireless network login) and select the **WPA Compatible** option in the Router.

Many types of encryption use a key to protect the information in the wireless network. The longer the key, the stronger the encryption. Every wireless client in the wireless network must have the same key.

12.3.1.4 WPS

WiFi Protected Setup (WPS) is an industry standard specification, defined by the WiFi Alliance. WPS allows you to quickly set up a wireless network with strong security, without having to configure security settings manually. Depending on the devices in your network, you can either press a button (on the device itself, or in its configuration utility) or enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number) in the devices. Then, they connect and set up a secure network by themselves. See how to set up a secure wireless network using WPS in the Section 11.3 on page 87.

12.3.1.5 WDS

Wireless Distribution System or WDS security is used between bridged APs. It is independent of the security between the wired networks and their respective APs. If you do not enable WDS security, traffic between APs is not encrypted. When WDS security is enabled, both APs must use the same pre-shared key.

12.4 General Wireless LAN Screen

Use this screen to enable the Wireless LAN, enter the SSID and select the wireless security mode.

Note: If you are configuring the Router from a computer connected to the wireless LAN and you change the Router's SSID, channel or security settings, you will lose your wireless connection when you press **Apply** to confirm. You must then change the wireless settings of your computer to match the Router's new settings.

Click Network > Wireless LAN to open the General screen.

Figure 73 Network > Wireless LAN > General						
General MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling WDS		
Wireless Setup						
Wireless LAN :		OFF				
Network Name(SSID)	:	ZyXE	L335260			
Hide SSID						
Channel Selection :		Char	inel-01 2412MHz	🗾 🗹 Auto Channel S	election	
Operating Channel :		Chanr	nel-06 2437MHz			
Security						
Security Mode		No S	ecurity 💌			
Note: WPA-PSK a	and WPA2-PSK (can be configu	ured when WPS	enabled		
		Appl	y Cance	el		

The following table describes the general wireless LAN labels in this screen.

 Table 42
 Network > Wireless LAN > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Wireless Setup	
Wireless LAN	This is turned on by default. You can turn the wireless LAN on or off using the switch at the rear panel of the Router. The current wireless state is reflected in this field.
Network Name(SSID)	(Service Set IDentity) The SSID identifies the Service Set with which a wireless station is associated. Wireless stations associating to the Router must have the same SSID. Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 keyboard characters) for the wireless LAN.
Hide SSID	Select this check box to hide the SSID in the outgoing beacon frame so a station cannot obtain the SSID through scanning using a site survey tool.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Channel	Set the operating frequency/channel depending on your particular region.
Selection	Select a channel from the drop-down list box. The options vary depending on the frequency band and the country you are in.
	Refer to the Connection Wizard chapter for more information on channels. This option is only available if Auto Channel Selection is disabled.
Operating Channel	This displays the channel the Router is currently using.
Security	
Security Mode	Select WEP , WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK to add security on this wireless network. The wireless clients which want to associate to this network must have same wireless security settings as the Router. After you select to use a security, additional options appears in this screen. See 12.4.2 and 12.4.3 sections.
	Or you can select No Security to allow any client to associate this network without authentication.
	Note: If you enable the WPS function, only No Security , WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK are available in this field.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Reset	Click Reset to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

Table 42Network > Wireless LAN > General (continued)

See the rest of this chapter for information on the other labels in this screen.

12.4.1 No Security

Select **No Security** to allow wireless stations to communicate with the access points without any data encryption.

Note: If you do not enable any wireless security on your Router, your network is accessible to any wireless networking device that is within range.

						. NO Secu					
General	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS	WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling	WDS				
Wireless	s Setup										
Wirele	ss LAN :			OFF							
Netwo	ork Name(SSID)	:		ZyXE	EL335260						
Пн	ide SSID										
Chann	el Selection :			Cha	Channel-01 2412MHz 🗹 🖌 Auto Channel Selection						
Opera	ting Channel :			Chan	Channel-06 2437MHz						
Security											
Secur	ity Mode		No S	No Security							
📄 No	ote: WPA-PSK a	and WPA2-PS	K can be	config	ured when WP	S enabled					
				App	ly Canc	el					

Figure 74 Network > Wireless LAN > General: No Security

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 43 Network > Wireless LAN > General: No Security							
LABEL	DESCRIPTION						
Security Mode	Choose No Security from the drop-down list box.						
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.						
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.						

 Table 43
 Network > Wireless LAN > General: No Security

Refer to Table 42 on page 104 for descriptions of the other labels in this screen.

12.4.2 WEP Encryption

WEP encryption scrambles the data transmitted between the wireless stations and the access points to keep network communications private. It encrypts unicast and multicast communications in a network. Both the wireless stations and the access points must use the same WEP key.

Your Router allows you to configure up to four 64-bit or 128-bit WEP keys but only one key can be enabled at any one time.

In order to configure and enable WEP encryption, click **Network** > **Wireless LAN** to display the **General** screen. Select **Static WEP** from the **Security Mode** list.

General MAC Filter Advanced	Qos WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling	WDS				
				7000000				
Wireless Setup								
Wireless LAN :		OFF						
Network Name(SSID) :		ZyX	ZyXEL335260					
Hide SSID								
Channel Selection :		Cha	annel-01 2412MF	Iz 💌 🗹 Auto Channel Selection				
Operating Channel :		Cha	nnel-06 2437MH;	z				
Security								
Security Mode		Sta	tic WEP 💌					
PassPhrase				Generate				
WEP Encryption		64-	64-bits					
Authentication Method		Aut	to 💌					
Note:								
64-bit WEP: Enter 5 ASCII o	haracters or 10	hexadecimal c	haracters ("0-9)", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).				
128-bit WEP: Enter 13 ASCI	I characters or	26 hexadecima	I characters ("	0-9", "A-F") for each Key (1-4).				
(Select one WEP key as ar	active key to e	encrypt wireles	s data transmi	ssion.)				
	C ASCI	• HEX						
C Key 1								
C Key 2								
C Key 3								
C Key 4								
Note: WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK can be configured when WPS enabled								
			Apply	Cancel				

Figure 75 Network > Wireless LAN > General: Static WEP

The following table describes the wireless LAN security labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION					
Security Mode	Select Static WEP to enable data encryption.					
PassPhrase	Enter a Passphrase (up to 26 printable characters) and click Generate.					
	A passphrase functions like a password. In WEP security mode, it is further converted by the Router into a complicated string that is referred to as the "key". This key is requested from all devices wishing to connect to a wireless network.					
WEP Encryption	Select 64-bit WEP or 128-bit WEP.					
	This dictates the length of the security key that the network is going to use.					
Authentication	Select Auto or Shared Key from the drop-down list box.					
Method	This field specifies whether the wireless clients have to provide the WEP key to login to the wireless client. Keep this setting at Auto unless you want to force a key verification before communication between the wireless client and the Router occurs.					
	Select Shared Key to force the clients to provide the WEP key prior to communication.					
ASCII	Select this option in order to enter ASCII characters as WEP key.					
Hex	Select this option in order to enter hexadecimal characters as a WEP key.					
	The preceding "0x", that identifies a hexadecimal key, is entered automatically.					
Key 1 to Key 4	The WEP keys are used to encrypt data. Both the Router and the wireless stations must use the same WEP key for data transmission.					
	If you chose 64-bit WEP , then enter any 5 ASCII characters or 10 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F").					
	If you chose 128-bit WEP , then enter 13 ASCII characters or 26 hexadecimal characters ("0-9", "A-F").					
	You must configure at least one key, only one key can be activated at any one time.					
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.					
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.					

 Table 44
 Network > Wireless LAN > General: Static WEP

Refer to Table 42 on page 104 for descriptions of the other labels in this screen.

12.4.3 WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK

Click **Network** > **Wireless LAN** to display the **General** screen. Select **WPA-PSK** or **WPA2-PSK** from the **Security Mode** list.

Figure 76	Network >	Wireless	LAN >	General:	WPA-PSK	/WPA2-PSK
-----------	-----------	----------	-------	----------	---------	-----------

General	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS	WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling	WDS				
Wirele	ss Setup										
Win	eless LAN :				OF	OFF					
Net	work Name(SSI	D):			Zy	ZyXEL335260					
	Hide SSID										
Cha	innel Selection :				CI	hannel-01 2412M	Hz 💌	Auto Channel Selection			
Ope	erating Channel				Chi	annel-06 2437MF	lz				
Securit	ty										
Sec	urity Mode				W	WPA2-PSK					
	WPA Compatib	le									
Pre	Shared Key				63	63124996					
Gro	up Key Update	Timer			36	00 seconds					
	Note: WPA-PS	K and WPA2-P	SK can	be conf	igured when W	PS enabled					
						Apply	Cancel				

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Mode	Select WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK to enable data encryption.
WPA-PSK Compatible	This field appears when you choose WPA-PSK2 as the Security Mode . Check this field to allow wireless devices using WPA-PSK security mode to connect to your
	Router.
Pre-Shared Key	WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK uses a simple common password for authentication.
	Type a pre-shared key from 8 to 63 case-sensitive keyboard characters.
Group Key Update Timer	The Group Key Update Timer is the rate at which the AP sends a new group key out to all clients.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

Table 45 Network > Wireless LAN > General: WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK

Refer to Table 42 on page 104 for descriptions of the other labels in this screen.

12.5 MAC Filter

The MAC filter screen allows you to configure the Router to give exclusive access to devices (Allow) or exclude devices from accessing the Router (Deny). Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six

pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02. You need to know the MAC address of the devices to configure this screen.

To change your Router's MAC filter settings, click **Network** > **Wireless LAN** > **MAC Filter**. The screen appears as shown.

Genera	MAC Filt	er Advanced	QoS	WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling	WDS	
Acce	ss Policy							
Policy Add a station Mac Address:				Disabl	e 💌]		
	MAC Filter	Summary						
	Delete		MAC	Addres	s	D	elete	MAC Address
	Ū		AA:BB:C	C:11:22	33			
					A	Ca	ncel	

The following table describes the labels in this menu.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION						
Access Policy	Access Policy						
Policy	Define the filter action for the list of MAC addresses in the MAC Address table.						
	Select Allow to permit access to the Router, MAC addresses not listed will be denied access to the Router.						
	Select Reject to block access to the Router, MAC addresses not listed will be allowed to access the Router						
Add a station Mac Address	Enter the MAC addresses of the wireless station that are allowed or denied access to the Router in these address fields. Enter the MAC addresses in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs, for example, 12:34:56:78:9a:bc. Click Add .						
MAC Filter Summ	ary						
Delete	Click the delete icon to remove the MAC address from the list.						
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the wireless station that are allowed or denied access to the Router.						
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.						
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.						

Table 46 Network > Wireless LAN > MAC Filter

12.6 Wireless LAN Advanced Screen

Use this screen to allow wireless advanced features, such as intra-BSS networking and set the RTS/CTS Threshold

Click Network > Wireless LAN > Advanced. The screen appears as shown.

General MAC Filter Advanced QoS WPS	
Wireless Advanced Setup	
RTS/CTS Threshold	2347 (1~2347)
Fragmentation Threshold	2346 (256 ~ 2346)
Enable Intra-BSS Traffic	
Output Power	100%
Network Mode	11b/g/n mixed mode
HT Physical Mode	
Operating Mode	⊙ Mixed C Green
Channel BandWidth	O 20
Guard Interval	O long O Auto
Extension Channel	AUTO 🔽
	Apply Cancel

Figure 78 Network > Wireless LAN > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
RTS/CTS Threshold	Data with its frame size larger than this value will perform the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear To Send) handshake.
Fragmentation Threshold	The threshold (number of bytes) for the fragmentation boundary for directed messages. It is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent. Enter an even number.
Enable Intra- BSS Traffic	A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless clients or between a wireless client and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).
	Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless clients in the BSS. When Intra-BSS is enabled, wireless client A and B can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS is disabled, wireless client A and B can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.
Output Power	Set the output power of the Router in this field. If there is a high density of APs in an area, decrease the output power of the Router to reduce interference with other APs. Select one of the following 100% , 90% , 75% , 50% , 25% , 10% or Minimum . See the product specifications for more information on your Router's output power.
Network Mode	Select 11b/g mixed mode to allow IEEE802.11b and IEEE802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Router.
	Select 802.11b only to allow only IEEE 802.11b compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Router.
	Select 802.11g only to allow only IEEE 802.11g compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Router.
	Select 802.11n only to allow only IEEE 802.11n compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Router.
	Select 11b/g/n mixed mode to allow IEEE802.11b, IEEE802.11g and IEEE802.11n compliant WLAN devices to associate with the Router.

Table 47Network > Wireless LAN > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION						
HT (High Throug your Router.	HT (High Throughput) Physical Mode - Use the fields below to configure the 802.11 wireless environment of your Router.						
Operating	Choose this according to the wireless mode(s) used in your network.						
Mode	Mixed Mode - Select this if the wireless clients in your network use different wireless modes (for example, IEEE 802.11b/g and IEEE 802.1n modes)						
	Green Mode - Select this if the wireless clients in your network uses only one type of wireless mode (for example, IEEEE 802.11 n only)						
Channel	Select the channel bandwidth you want to use for your wireless network.						
Bandwidth	It is recommended that you select 20/40 (20/40 MHz).						
	Select 20 MHz if you want to lessen radio interference with other wireless devices in your neighborhood.						
Guard Interval	Select Auto to increase data throughput. However, this may make data transfer more prone to errors.						
	Select Long to prioritize data integrity. This may be because your wireless network is busy and congested or the Router is located in an environment prone to radio interference.						
Extension	This is set to Auto by default.						
Channel	If you select 20/40 as your Channel Bandwidth , the extension channel enables the Router to get higher data throughput. This also lowers radio interference and traffic.						
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.						
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.						

Table 47 Network > Wireless LAN > Advanced (continued)

12.7 Quality of Service (QoS) Screen

The QoS screen allows you to automatically give a service (such as VoIP and video) a priority level.

Click Network > Wireless LAN > QoS. The following screen appears.

General	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS	WPS	WPS Station	Schedul		
	onfiguration Enable WMM Q	oS						
					Ap	bly	Cancel	

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable WMM QoS	Check this to have the Router automatically give a service a priority level according to the ToS value in the IP header of packets it sends. WMM QoS (Wifi MultiMedia Quality of Service) gives high priority to voice and video, which makes them run more smoothly.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to the Router.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

Table 48 Network > Wireless LAN > QoS

12.8 WPS Screen

Use this screen to enable/disable WPS, view or generate a new PIN number and check current WPS status. To open this screen, click **Network** > **Wireless LAN** > **WPS** tab.

Figure 80	Network	>	Wireless	IAN	>	WPS
i igui c oo	NCCWOIN	-	vvii CiC33		-	WI U

General	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS	WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling	WDS	
	WPS Setup							
v	Enable WPS							
PIN I	Number :			33634	4241			Generate
Status								
Stat	us :			Confi	gured			Release_Configuration
802	.11 Mode :			11 b/g	g/n			
SSIE) :			ZyXE	L335260			
Sec	urity :			No Se	ecurity			
D	Note: If you en	able WPS, the	: <u>UPnP</u> s	ervice	vill be turned o			
					Ap	ply Can	cel	

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WPS Setup	
Enable WPS	Select this to enable the WPS feature.
PIN Number	This displays a PIN number last time system generated. Click Generate to generate a new PIN number.
Status	
Status	This displays Configured when the Router has connected to a wireless network using WPS or when Enable WPS is selected and wireless or wireless security settings have been changed. The current wireless and wireless security settings also appear in the screen.
	This displays Unconfigured if WPS is disabled and there are no wireless or wireless security changes on the Router or you click Release_Configuration to remove the configured wireless and wireless security settings.
Release	This button is only available when the WPS status displays Configured .
Configuration	Click this button to remove all configured wireless and wireless security settings for WPS connections on the Router.
802.11 Mode	This is the 802.11 mode used. Only compliant WLAN devices can associate with the Router.
SSID	This is the name of the wireless network.
Security	This is the type of wireless security employed by the network.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.

Table 49 Network > Wireless LAN > WPS

12.9 WPS Station Screen

Use this screen when you want to add a wireless station using WPS. To open this screen, click **Network > Wireless LAN > WPS Station** tab.

Note: Note: After you click **Push Button** on this screen, you have to press a similar button in the wireless station utility within 2 minutes. To add the second wireless station, you have to press these buttons on both device and the wireless station again after the first 2 minutes.

Figure 81	Network >	Wireless LAN >	WPS Station
I Igui C UI			

General	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS 1	WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling	WDS	
Add Sta	tion by WPS							
Click t	the below Push	Button to add	WPS static	ons to v	wireless network			
Push	Button							
Or inp	out station's PIN	numbe r :		Γ		Start		
🧾 Ne	ote:							
	1. The Push Bu	utton Configu	ration rec	quires	pressing a but	ton on both the	e statior	n and AP within 120 seconds.
;	2. You may fin	d the PIN nurr	nber in the	e stati	ion's utility.			

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Push Button	Use this button when you use the PBC (Push Button Configuration) method to configure wireless stations's wireless settings. See Section 11.3.1 on page 88.
	Click this to start WPS-aware wireless station scanning and the wireless security information synchronization.
Or input station's PIN	Use this button when you use the PIN Configuration method to configure wireless station's wireless settings. See Section 11.3.2 on page 89.
number	Type the same PIN number generated in the wireless station's utility. Then click Start to associate to each other and perform the wireless security information synchronization.

Table 50Network > Wireless LAN > WPS Station

12.10 Scheduling Screen

Use this screen to set the times your wireless LAN is turned on and off. Wireless LAN scheduling is disabled by default. The wireless LAN can be scheduled to turn on or off on certain days and at certain times. To open this screen, click **Network** > **Wireless LAN** > **Scheduling** tab.

Figure 82 Network > Wireless LAN > Schedulir	Figure 82	s LAN > Schedulin	Wireless	< >	Network	Figure 82
--	-----------	-------------------	----------	-----	---------	-----------

Genera	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS	WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling	WDS								
Wirol	ooo LAN Sebedi	ling													
	ess LAN Schedu	-													
[Enable Wireles	s LAN Schedu	ling												
	Scheduling														
	WLAN	status			Day		Fort	the follow	wing tim	nes (2	24-Ho	ur Form	nat)		
	O On	⊙ Off		₽ E	veryday	00 💌	(hour)	00 💌	(min)	- 0	0 🔻	(hour)	00 🔻	(min)	
	O On	Off		ΠM	lon	00 💌	(hour)	00 💌	(min)	~ 0	0 🔻	(hour)	• 00	(min)	
	O On	⊙ Off		Пт	ue	00 💌	(hour)	00 💌	(min)	~ 0	0 💌	(hour)	• 00	(min)	
	O On	⊙ Off		ΠV	/ed	00 💌	(hour)	00 🔻	(min)	~ 0	0 🔻	(hour)	• 00	(min)	
	O On	⊙ Off		Пт	hu	00 💌	(hour)	00 💌	(min)	~ 0	0 🔻	(hour)	• 00	(min)	
	O On	⊙ Off		ΓF	ri	00 💌	(hour)	00 💌	(min)	~ 0	0 🔻	(hour)	• 00	(min)	
	O On	⊙ Off		🗆 s	at	00 💌	(hour)	00 🔻	(min)	~ 0	0 🔻	(hour)	• 00	(min)	
	O On	Off		🗆 s	un	00 💌	(hour)	00 💌	(min)	- 0	0 💌	(hour)	• 00	(min)	
	Note: Specifyi	ng the begin	time as 0(0:00 an	d end time as 2	24:00 means t	he whole	e day sc	hedule.						
					Ap	Ca	ncel								

Table 51	Network >	Wireless LAN	>	Scheduling
----------	-----------	--------------	---	------------

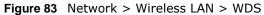
LABEL	DESCRIPTION					
Wireless LAN Sch	Wireless LAN Scheduling					
Enable Wireless LAN Scheduling	Select this to enable Wireless LAN scheduling.					
Scheduling						
WLAN Status	Select On or Off to specify whether the Wireless LAN is turned on or off. This field works in conjunction with the Day and Except for the following times fields.					
Day	Select Everyday or the specific days to turn the Wireless LAN on or off. If you select Everyday you can not select any specific days. This field works in conjunction with the Except for the following times field.					
For the following times (24-Hour Format)	Select a begin time using the first set of hour and minute (min) drop down boxes and select an end time using the second set of hour and minute (min) drop down boxes. If you have chosen On earlier for the WLAN Status the Wireless LAN will turn on between the two times you enter in these fields. If you have chosen Off earlier for the WLAN Status the Wireless LAN will turn off between the two times you enter in these fields.					
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.					
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.					

12.11 WDS Screen

A Wireless Distribution System is a wireless connection between two or more APs. Use this screen to set the operating mode of your Router to **AP** + **Bridge** or **Bridge Only** and establish wireless links with other APs. You need to know the MAC address of the peer device, which also must be in bridge mode.

Note: You must enable the same wireless security settings on the Router and on all wireless clients that you want to associate with it.

Click **Network** > **Wireless LAN** > **WDS** tab. The following screen opens with the **Basic Setting** set to **Disabled**, and **Security Mode** set to **No Security**.



General	MAC Filter	Advanced	QoS	WPS	WPS Station	Scheduling	WDS			
WDS Se	tup									
Basi	ic Setting:				AP+Br	AP+Bridge				
Loca	al MAC Address	8:			00:0C:4	3:33:52:60				
Phy	Mode				ССК	•				
Rem	ote MAC Addre	\$\$								
Rem	Remote MAC Address									
Rem	ote MAC Addre	ss								
Rem	Remote MAC Address									
Securit	y									
Enci	урТуре				WEP	•				
Enci	ур Кеу									
					App	Can	cel			

Table 52 Network > Wireless LAN > WDS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
WDS Setup	
Basic Settings	 Select the operating mode for your Router. AP + Bridge - The Router functions as a bridge and access point simultaneously. Bridge - The Router acts as a wireless network bridge and establishes wireless links with other APs. You need to know the MAC address of the peer device, which also must be in bridge mode. The Router can establish up to five wireless links with other APs.
Local MAC Address	This is the MAC address of your Router.
Phy Mode	Select the Phy mode you want the Router to use. This dictates the maximum size of packets during data transmission.
Remote MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the peer device that your Router wants to make a bridge connection with. You can connect to up to 4 peer devices.
Security	·

LABEL	DESCRIPTION					
EncrypType	Select whether to use WEP , TKIP or AES encryption for your WDS connection in this field.					
	Otherwise, select No Security.					
EncrypKey	The Encryp key is used to encrypt data. Peers must use the same key for data transmission.					
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes to Router.					
Cancel	Click Cancel to reload the previous configuration for this screen.					

Table 52 Network > Wireless LAN > WDS (continued)

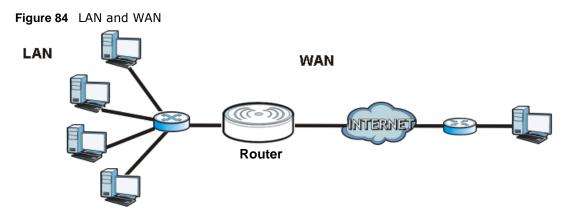
13

WAN

13.1 Overview

This chapter discusses the Router's **WAN** screens. Use these screens to configure your Router for Internet access.

A WAN (Wide Area Network) connection is an outside connection to another network or the Internet. It connects your private networks such as a LAN (Local Area Network) and other networks, so that a computer in one location can communicate with computers in other locations.



13.2 What You Can Do

- Use the Internet Connection screen (Section 13.4 on page 119) to enter your ISP information and set how the computer acquires its IP, DNS and WAN MAC addresses.
- Use the **Advanced** screen (Section 13.5 on page 128) to enable multicasting, configure Windows networking and bridge.
- Use **IGMP Blocking** screen (Section 13.6 on page 129) to enable IGMP blocking in the LAN ports.

13.3 What You Need To Know

The information in this section can help you configure the screens for your WAN connection, as well as enable/disable some advanced features of your Router.

13.3.1 Configuring Your Internet Connection

Encapsulation Method

Encapsulation is used to include data from an upper layer protocol into a lower layer protocol. To set up a WAN connection to the Internet, you need to use the same encapsulation method used by your ISP (Internet Service Provider). If your ISP offers a dial-up Internet connection using PPPoE (PPP over Ethernet) or PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol), they should also provide a username and password (and service name) for user authentication.

WAN IP Address

The WAN IP address is an IP address for the Router, which makes it accessible from an outside network. It is used by the Router to communicate with other devices in other networks. It can be static (fixed) or dynamically assigned by the ISP each time the Router tries to access the Internet.

If your ISP assigns you a static WAN IP address, they should also assign you the subnet mask and DNS server IP address(es) (and a gateway IP address if you use the Ethernet or ENET ENCAP encapsulation method).

DNS Server Address Assignment

Use Domain Name System (DNS) to map a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa, for instance, the IP address of www.zyxel.com is 204.217.0.2. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a computer before you can access it.

The Router can get the DNS server addresses in the following ways.

- 1 The ISP tells you the DNS server addresses, usually in the form of an information sheet, when you sign up. If your ISP gives you DNS server addresses, manually enter them in the DNS server fields.
- 2 If your ISP dynamically assigns the DNS server IP addresses (along with the Router's WAN IP address), set the DNS server fields to get the DNS server address from the ISP.

WAN MAC Address

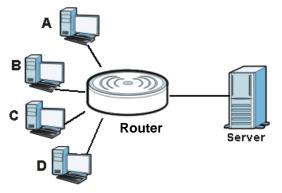
The MAC address screen allows users to configure the WAN port's MAC address by either using the factory default or cloning the MAC address from a computer on your LAN. Choose **Factory Default** to select the factory assigned default MAC Address.

Otherwise, click **Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address** and enter the IP address of the computer on the LAN whose MAC you are cloning. Once it is successfully configured, the address will be copied to configuration file. It is recommended that you clone the MAC address prior to hooking up the WAN Port.

13.3.2 Multicast

Traditionally, IP packets are transmitted in one of either two ways - Unicast (1 sender - 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender - everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to a group of hosts on the network - not everybody and not just 1.





In the multicast example above, systems A and D comprise one multicast group. In multicasting, the server only needs to send one data stream and this is delivered to systems A and D.

IGMP (Internet Group Multicast Protocol) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. The Router supports both IGMP version 1 (IGMP-v1) and IGMP version 2 (IGMP-v2).

At start up, the Router queries all directly connected networks to gather group membership. After that, the Router periodically updates this information. IP multicasting can be enabled/disabled on the Router LAN and/or WAN interfaces in the Web Configurator (LAN; WAN). Select **None** to disable IP multicasting on these interfaces.

13.4 Internet Connection

Use this screen to change your Router's Internet access settings. Click **WAN** from the Configuration menu. The screen differs according to the encapsulation you choose.

13.4.1 Ethernet Encapsulation

This screen displays when you select **Ethernet** encapsulation.

Figure 86 Network > WAN > Internet Connection: Ethernet Encapsulation

Internet Connection	Advanced	IGMP Blocking	
ISP Parameters fo Encapsulation :	r Internet Acc	ess	Ethernet
WAN IP Address A		(Default)	
O Use Fixed I IP Address : IP Subnet Ma Gateway IP ;	sk :		172.23.26.8 255.255.255.0
WAN DNS Assignm First DNS Serve Second DNS Se	r:		From ISP V
WAN MAC Address Factory de Clone the ca C Set WAN M	fault omputer's MAC	address - IP Addres	35
			Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 53 Network > WAN > Internet Connection: Ethernet Encapsulation

LABEL	DESCRIPTION						
ISP Parameters	ISP Parameters for Internet Access						
Encapsulation	You must choose the Ethernet option when the WAN port is used as a regular Ethernet.						
WAN IP Address	Assignment						
Get automatically from ISP (Default)	Select this option If your ISP did not assign you a fixed IP address. This is the default selection.						
Use Fixed IP Address	Select this option If the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.						
IP Address	Enter your WAN IP address in this field if you selected Use Fixed IP Address.						
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP Subnet Mask in this field.						
Gateway IP Address	Enter a Gateway IP Address (if your ISP gave you one) in this field.						
WAN DNS Assign	iment						

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
First DNS Server Second DNS	Select From ISP if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the Router's WAN IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the ISP assigns.
Server	Select User-Defined if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose User-Defined , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . If you set a second choice to User-Defined , and enter the same IP address, the second User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply .
	Select None if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a computer in order to access it.
WAN MAC Address	The MAC address section allows users to configure the WAN port's MAC address by either using the Router's MAC address, copying the MAC address from a computer on your LAN or manually entering a MAC address.
Factory default	Select Factory default to use the factory assigned default MAC Address.
Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address	Select Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address and enter the IP address of the computer on the LAN whose MAC you are cloning.
Set WAN MAC Address	Select this option and enter the MAC address you want to use.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 53 Network > WAN > Internet Connection: Ethernet Encapsulation (continued)

13.4.2 PPPoE Encapsulation

The Router supports PPPoE (Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet). PPPoE is an IETF standard (RFC 2516) specifying how a personal computer (PC) interacts with a broadband modem (DSL, cable, wireless, etc.) connection. The **PPP over Ethernet** option is for a dial-up connection using PPPoE.

For the service provider, PPPoE offers an access and authentication method that works with existing access control systems (for example Radius).

One of the benefits of PPPoE is the ability to let you access one of multiple network services, a function known as dynamic service selection. This enables the service provider to easily create and offer new IP services for individuals.

Operationally, PPPoE saves significant effort for both you and the ISP or carrier, as it requires no specific configuration of the broadband modem at the customer site.

By implementing PPPoE directly on the Router (rather than individual computers), the computers on the LAN do not need PPPoE software installed, since the Router does that part of the task. Furthermore, with NAT, all of the LANs' computers will have access.

This screen displays when you select **PPPoE** encapsulation.

Figure 87	Network >	WAN >	Internet	Connection:	PPPoE	Encapsulation
-----------	-----------	-------	----------	-------------	-------	---------------

Internet Connection Advanced	IGMP Blocking	
ISP Parameters for Internet Act	cess	
Encapsulation :		PPP over Ethernet
User Name :		pppoe_user
Password :		•••••
Retype to Confirm :		•••••
MTU Size :		1454
Nailed-Up Connection		
Idle Timeout (sec)		300 (in seconds)
WAN IP Address Assignment		
Get automatically from ISF	3	
C Use Fixed IP Address		
My WAN IP Address :		
WAN DNS Assignment		
First DNS Server :		From ISP
Second DNS Server :		From ISP
WAN MAC Address		
S Factory default		
C Clone the computer's MAC	address - IP Address	
C Set WAN MAC Address		
		Apply Reset

 Table 54
 Network > WAN > Internet Connection: PPPoE Encapsulation

LABEL	DESCRIPTION					
ISP Parameters for	ISP Parameters for Internet Access					
Encapsulation	Select PPP over Ethernet if you connect to your Internet via dial-up.					
User Name	Type the user name given to you by your ISP.					
Password	Type the password associated with the user name above.					
Retype to Confirm	Type your password again to make sure that you have entered is correctly.					
MTU Size	Enter the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) or the largest packet size per frame that your Router can receive and process.					
Nailed-Up Connection	Select Nailed-Up Connection if you do not want the connection to time out.					
Idle Timeout (sec)	This value specifies the time in minutes that elapses before the router automatically disconnects from the PPPoE server.					
WAN IP Address Assignment						
Get automatically from ISP	Select this option If your ISP did not assign you a fixed IP address. This is the default selection.					

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Use Fixed IP Address	Select this option If the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.
My WAN IP Address	Enter your WAN IP address in this field if you selected Use Fixed IP Address.
WAN DNS Assignm	hent
First DNS Server Second DNS Server	Select From ISP if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the Router's WAN IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the ISP assigns.
	Select User-Defined if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose User-Defined , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . If you set a second choice to User-Defined , and enter the same IP address, the second User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply .
	Select None if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a computer in order to access it.
WAN MAC Address	The MAC address section allows users to configure the WAN port's MAC address by using the Router's MAC address, copying the MAC address from a computer on your LAN or manually entering a MAC address.
Factory default	Select Factory default to use the factory assigned default MAC Address.
Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address	Select Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address and enter the IP address of the computer on the LAN whose MAC you are cloning.
Set WAN MAC Address	Select this option and enter the MAC address you want to use.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 54	Network >	WAN >	Internet Connection:	PPPoE Encapsulation	(continued)
					(concinaca)

13.4.3 PPTP Encapsulation

Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) is a network protocol that enables secure transfer of data from a remote client to a private server, creating a Virtual Private Network (VPN) using TCP/IP-based networks.

PPTP supports on-demand, multi-protocol and virtual private networking over public networks, such as the Internet.

This screen displays when you select **PPTP** encapsulation.

Figure 88	Network >	WAN >	Internet	Connection:	PPTP	Encapsulation
-----------	-----------	-------	----------	-------------	------	---------------

Internet Connection	Advanced	IGMP Blocking	
ISP Parameters fo	r Internet Acc	ess	
Encapsulation :			РРТР
User Name :			pptp_user
Password :			•••••
Retype to Confi	irm :		•••••
Nailed-Up	Connection		
Idle Timeout (se	ec)		300 (in seconds)
PPTP Configuration	on		
Server IP Addr	ress :		pptp_server
C Get auton	natically from ISF	р	
O Use Fixed			
IP Address	:		172.23.26.8
IP Subnet M	lask :		255.255.0
Gateway IP	Address :		
-			
WAN IP Address A	Assignment		
Get auton	natically from ISF	р	
O Use Fixed	I IP Address		
My WAN IP	Address :		
WAN DNS Assignr	nent		
First DNS Serv	/er :		From ISP
Second DNS S	Server :		From ISP
WAN MAC Addres	s		
Factory d	efault		
		Caddress - IP Addre	ess
C Set WAN I	MAC Address		
			Apply Reset

Table 55	Network >	WAN >	Internet	Connection:	PPTP	Encapsulation
----------	-----------	-------	----------	-------------	------	---------------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ISP Parameters f	or Internet Access
Connection Type	To configure a PPTP client, you must configure the User Name and Password fields for a PPP connection and the PPTP parameters for a PPTP connection.
User Name	Type the user name given to you by your ISP.
Password	Type the password associated with the User Name above.
Retype to Confirm	Type your password again to make sure that you have entered is correctly.

Nailed-up Connection	Select Nailed Up Connection if you do not want the connection to time out							
	Select Nailed-Up Connection if you do not want the connection to time out.							
Idle Timeout	This value specifies the time in minutes that elapses before the Router automatically disconnects from the PPTP server.							
PPTP Configuration	้าก							
Server IP Address	Type the IP address of the PPTP server.							
Get automatically from ISP	Select this option If your ISP did not assign you a fixed IP address. This is the default selection.							
Use Fixed IP Address	Select this option If the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.							
IP Address	Enter your WAN IP address in this field if you selected Use Fixed IP Address.							
IP Subnet Mask	Your Router will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IP address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use the subnet mask computed by the Router.							
Gateway IP Address	Enter a Gateway IP Address (if your ISP gave you one) in this field.							
WAN IP Address	Assignment							
Get automatically from ISP	Select this to get your WAN IP address from your ISP.							
Use Fixed IP Address	Select this option If the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.							
My WAN IP Address	Enter your WAN IP address in this field if you selected Use Fixed IP Address.							
WAN DNS Assign	ment							
First DNS Server Second DNS	Select From ISP if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the Router's WAN IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the ISP assigns.							
Server	Select User-Defined if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose User-Defined , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . If you set a second choice to User-Defined , and enter the same IP address, the second User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply .							
	Select None if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a computer in order to access it.							
WAN MAC Address	The MAC address section allows users to configure the WAN port's MAC address by either using the Router's MAC address, copying the MAC address from a computer on your LAN or manually entering a MAC address.							
Factory default	Select Factory default to use the factory assigned default MAC Address.							
Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address	Select Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address and enter the IP address of the computer on the LAN whose MAC you are cloning.							
Set WAN MAC Address	Select this option and enter the MAC address you want to use.							
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.							
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.							

Table 55	Network >	WAN >	Internet Connection: P	PTP Enca	psulation	(continued)

13.4.4 L2TP Encapsulation

The Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) works at layer 2 (the data link layer) to tunnel network traffic between two peer devices over another network (like the Internet).

This screen displays when you select L2TP encapsulation.

Internet Connection Advanced IGMP Blocking	
ISP Parameters for Internet Access	
Encapsulation :	L2TP
User Name :	l2tp_user
Password :	•••••
Retype to Confirm :	•••••
L2TP Configuration	
Server IP Address :	l2tp_server
O Get automatically from ISP	
O Use Fixed IP Address	
IP Address :	172.23.26.8
IP Subnet Mask :	255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address :	
WAN IP Address Assignment	
C Get automatically from ISP	
O Use Fixed IP Address	
My WAN IP Address :	
WAN DNS Assignment	
First DNS Server :	From ISP
Second DNS Server :	From ISP
WAN MAC Address	
S Factory default	
C Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address	
C Set WAN MAC Address	
	Apply Reset

Table 56	Network >	WAN >	Internet	Connection:	L2TP	Encapsulation
----------	-----------	-------	----------	-------------	------	---------------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ISP Parameters f	or Internet Access
Connection Type	To configure a L2TP client, you must configure the User Name and Password fields for a layer-2 connection and the L2TP parameters for an L2TP connection.
User Name	Type the user name given to you by your ISP.
Password	Type the password associated with the User Name above.
Retype to Confirm	Type your password again to make sure that you have entered is correctly.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
L2TP Configuration		
Server IP Address	Type the IP address of the L2TP server.	
Get automatically from ISP	Select this option If your ISP did not assign you a fixed IP address. This is the default selection.	
Use Fixed IP Address	Select this option If the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.	
IP Address	Enter your WAN IP address in this field if you selected Use Fixed IP Address.	
IP Subnet Mask	Your Router will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IP address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use the subnet mask computed by the Router.	
Gateway IP Address	Enter a Gateway IP Address (if your ISP gave you one) in this field.	
WAN IP Address	Assignment	
Get automatically from ISP	Select this to get your WAN IP address from your ISP.	
Use Fixed IP Address	Select this option If the ISP assigned a fixed IP address.	
My WAN IP Address	Enter your WAN IP address in this field if you selected Use Fixed IP Address.	
WAN DNS Assign	ment	
First DNS Server Second DNS	Select From ISP if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the Router's WAN IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the ISP assigns.	
Server	Select User-Defined if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose User-Defined , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . If you set a second choice to User-Defined , and enter the same IP address, the second User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply .	
	Select None if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a computer in order to access it.	
WAN MAC Address	The MAC address section allows users to configure the WAN port's MAC address by either using the Router's MAC address, copying the MAC address from a computer on your LAN or manually entering a MAC address.	
Factory default	Select Factory default to use the factory assigned default MAC Address.	
Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address	Select Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address and enter the IP address of the computer on the LAN whose MAC you are cloning.	
Set WAN MAC Address	Select this option and enter the MAC address you want to use.	
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.	
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.	

 Table 56
 Network > WAN > Internet Connection: L2TP Encapsulation (continued)

13.5 Advanced WAN Screen

Use this screen to enable Multicast and enable Auto-bridge.

Note: The categories shown in this screen are independent of each other.

To change your Router's advanced WAN settings, click **Network** > **WAN** > **Advanced**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 90 Network > WAN > Advanced

Internet Connection	Advanced	IGMP Blocking
Multicast Setup Multicast		None
Auto-Subnet Config	juration	
C None		
C Enable Auto-	bridge mode	
Enable Auto-	IP-Change mod	e
Note: Note: If you conflicts.	choose to er	nable Auto-IP-Change mode, the LAN IP will be automatically changed to 10.0.0.1 when WAN IP and LAN IP
		Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 57 Network > WAN > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Multicast Setup	Multicast Setup		
Multicast	Select $IGMPv1/v2$ to enable multicasting. This applies to traffic routed from the WAN to the LAN.		
	Select None to disable this feature. This may cause incoming traffic to be dropped or sent to all connected network devices.		
Auto-Subnet Set	up		
None	Select this option to have the Router do nothing when it gets a WAN IP address in the range of 192.168.x.y (where x and y are from zero to nine) or in the same subnet as the LAN IP address.		
Enable Auto- bridge mode	Select this option to have the Router switch to bridge mode automatically when the Router gets a WAN IP address in the range of 192.168.x.y (where x and y are from zero to nine) no matter what the LAN IP address is.		
Enable Auto-IP- Change mode	Select this option to have the Router change its LAN IP address to 10.0.0.1 or 192.168.1.1 accordingly when the Router gets a dynamic WAN IP address in the same subnet as the LAN IP address 192.168.1.1 or 10.0.0.1.		
	The NAT, DHCP server and firewall functions on the Router are still available in thismode.		
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.		
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

13.6 IGMP Blocking Screen

Use this screen to enable IGMP blocking (snooping) if you have LAN users that subscribe to multicast services.

IGMP (Internet Group Multicast Protocol) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data.

Click Network > WAN > IGMP Blocking. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 91 Network > WAN > IGMP Blocking

Internet Connection	Advanced	IGMP Blocking			
IGMP Block Setup					
Enable IGMP	Block				
LAN1					
LAN2					
LAN3					
LAN4					
			Apply	Reset	

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
IGMP Block Setu	p	
Enable IGMP	Select this option to have the Router use IGMP blocking (snooping).	
Block	Check the LAN port/s to which IGMP snooping applies.	
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.	
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.	

Table 58 Network > WAN > IGMP Blocking

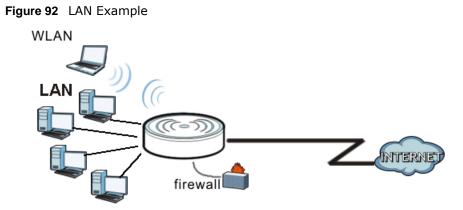
14

LAN

14.1 Overview

This chapter describes how to configure LAN settings.

A Local Area Network (LAN) is a shared communication system to which many computers are attached. A LAN is a computer network limited to the immediate area, usually the same building or floor of a building. The LAN screens can help you configure a LAN DHCP server, manage IP addresses, and partition your physical network into logical networks.



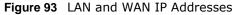
The LAN screens can help you manage IP addresses.

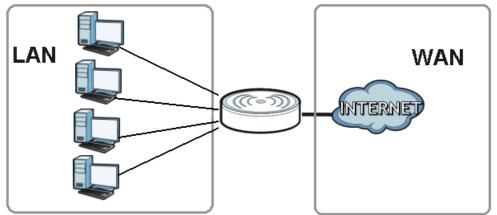
14.2 What You Can Do

- Use the IP screen (Section 14.4 on page 133) to change the IP address for your Router.
- Use the **IP Alias** screen (Section 14.5 on page 133) to have the Router apply IP alias to create LAN subnets.

14.3 What You Need To Know

The actual physical connection determines whether the Router ports are LAN or WAN ports. There are two separate IP networks, one inside the LAN network and the other outside the WAN network as shown next.





The LAN parameters of the Router are preset in the factory with the following values:

- IP address of 192.168.1.1 with subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 (24 bits)
- DHCP server enabled with 32 client IP addresses starting from 192.168.1.33.

These parameters should work for the majority of installations. If your ISP gives you explicit DNS server address(es), read the embedded Web Configurator help regarding what fields need to be configured.

14.3.1 IP Pool Setup

The Router is pre-configured with a pool of 32 IP addresses starting from 192.168.1.33 to 192.168.1.64. This configuration leaves 31 IP addresses (excluding the Router itself) in the lower range (192.168.1.2 to 192.168.1.32) for other server computers, for instance, servers for mail, FTP, TFTP, web, etc., that you may have.

14.3.2 LAN TCP/IP

The Router has built-in DHCP server capability that assigns IP addresses and DNS servers to systems that support DHCP client capability.

14.3.3 IP Alias

IP alias allows you to partition a physical network into different logical networks over the same Ethernet interface. The Router supports three logical LAN interfaces via its single physical Ethernet interface with the Router itself as the gateway for each LAN network.

14.4 LAN IP Screen

Use this screen to change the IP address for your Router. Click **Network > LAN > IP**.

Figure 94 Network > LAN > IP

192.168.1.1
255.255.255.0
Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 59 Network > LAN > IP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
IP Address	Type the IP address of your Router in dotted decimal notation.	
IP Subnet Mask	The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your Router will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IP address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use the subnet mask computed by the Router.	
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.	
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.	

14.5 IP Alias Screen

Use this screen to have the Router apply IP alias to create LAN subnets. Click LAN > IP Alias.

0.0.0.0
0.0.0
Apply Reset

Figure 95 Network > LAN > IP Alias

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Alias	Check this to enable IP alias.
IP Address	Type the IP alias address of your Router in dotted decimal notation.

Table 60 Network > LAN > IP Alias

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Subnet Mask	The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your Router will automatically calculate the subnet mask based on the IP address that you assign. Unless you are implementing subnetting, use the subnet mask computed by the Router.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Table 60 Network > LAN > IP Alias (continued)

DHCP Server

15.1 Overview

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual clients to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the Router's LAN as a DHCP server or disable it. When configured as a server, the Router provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If DHCP service is disabled, you must have another DHCP server on your LAN, or else the computer must be manually configured.

15.2 What You Can Do

- Use the General (Section 15.3 on page 135) screen to enable the DHCP server.
- Use the Advanced (Section 15.4 on page 136) screen to assign IP addresses on the LAN to specific individual computers based on their MAC Addresses.

15.3 General Screen

Use this screen to enable the DHCP server. Click **Network** > **DHCP Server**. The following screen displays.

Figure 96 N	etwork > DHCP S	erver > Ge	eneral	
General Ad	vanced			
LAN DHCP Se				
🗹 Enable D				
IP Pool Start	ing Address 192.168.1.33		Pool Size 32	
		Apply	Reset	

Table 61Network > DHCP Server > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable DHCP Server	Enable or Disable DHCP for LAN.
IP Pool Starting Address	This field specifies the first of the contiguous addresses in the IP address pool for LAN.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION				
Pool Size	This field specifies the size, or count of the IP address pool for LAN.				
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.				
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.				

Table 61 Network > DHCP Server > General (continued)

15.4 Advanced Screen

This screen allows you to assign IP addresses on the LAN to specific individual computers based on their MAC addresses. You can also use this screen to configure the DNS server information that the Router sends to the DHCP clients.

To change your Router's static DHCP settings, click **Network** > **DHCP Server** > **Advanced**. The following screen displays.

Figure 97 Network > DHCP Server > Advanced

Table 62Network > DHCP Server > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION				
LAN Static DHCP	LAN Static DHCP Table				
#	This is the index number of the static IP table entry (row).				
MAC Address Type the MAC address (with colons) of a computer on your LAN.					

LABEL	DESCRIPTION					
IP Address	Type the LAN IP address of a computer on your LAN.					
DNS Server	·					
DNS Servers Assigned by DHCP Server	The Router passes a DNS (Domain Name System) server IP address (in the order you specify here) to the DHCP clients. The Router only passes this information to the LAN DHCP clients when you select the Enable DHCP Server check box. When you clear the Enable DHCP Server check box, DHCP service is disabled and you must have another DHCP sever on your LAN, or else the computers must have their DNS server addresses manually configured.					
First DNS Server Second DNS	Select From ISP if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information (and the Router's WAN IP address). The field to the right displays the (read-only) DNS server IP address that the ISP assigns.					
Server	Select User-Defined if you have the IP address of a DNS server. Enter the DNS server's IP address in the field to the right. If you chose User-Defined , but leave the IP address set to 0.0.0.0, User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply . If you set a second choice to User-Defined , and enter the same IP address, the second User-Defined changes to None after you click Apply .					
	Select DNS Relay to have the Router act as a DNS proxy. The Router's LAN IP address displays in the field to the right (read-only). The Router tells the DHCP clients on the LAN that the Router itself is the DNS server. When a computer on the LAN sends a DNS query to the Router, the Router forwards the query to the Router's system DNS server (configured in the WAN > Internet Connection screen) and relays the response back to the computer. You can only select DNS Relay for one of the three servers; if you select DNS Relay for a second or third DNS server, that choice changes to None after you click Apply .					
	Select None if you do not want to configure DNS servers. If you do not configure a DNS server, you must know the IP address of a computer in order to access it.					
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.					
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.					

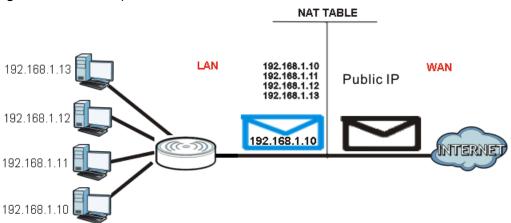
Table 62Network > DHCP Server > Advanced (continued)

Network Address Translation (NAT)

16.1 Overview

NAT (Network Address Translation - NAT, RFC 1631) is the translation of the IP address of a host in a packet. For example, the source address of an outgoing packet, used within one network is changed to a different IP address known within another network.

Each packet has two addresses – a source address and a destination address. For outgoing packets, NAT maps private (local) IP addresses to globally unique ones required for communication with hosts on other networks. It replaces the original IP source address in each packet and then forwards it to the Internet. The Router keeps track of the original addresses and port numbers so incoming reply packets can have their original values restored. The following figure illustrates this.





For more information on IP address translation, refer to *RFC 1631*, *The IP Network Address Translator (NAT)*.

16.2 What You Can Do

- Use the General screen (Section 16.3 on page 140) to enable NAT and set a default server.
- Use the **Application** screen (Section 16.4 on page 140) o forward incoming service requests to the server(s) on your local network.
- Use the **Advanced** screen (Section 16.5 on page 142) to change your Router's trigger port settings.

16.3 General NAT Screen

Use this screen to enable NAT and set a default server. Click **Network > NAT > General** to open the following screen.

Figure 99 Network > NAT > General

General	Application	Advanced			
NAT Setu Ena	up ble Network Add	łress Translatic	חי		
Default 9	erver Setup				
Server	IP Address :		0.0.0.0		
			Apply	Reset	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION					
NAT Setup						
Enable Network Address Translation	Network Address Translation (NAT) allows the translation of an Internet protocol address used within one network (for example a private IP address used in a local network) to a different IP address known within another network (for example a public IP address used on the Internet).					
	Select the check box to enable NAT.					
Default Server S	etup					
Server IP Address	In addition to the servers for specified services, NAT supports a default server. A default server receives packets from ports that are not specified in the Application screen. If you do not assign a Default Server IP address , the Router discards all packets received for ports that are not specified in the Application screen or remote management.					
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.					
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.					

Table 63 Network > NAT > General

16.4 NAT Application Screen

Use the **Application** screen to forward incoming service requests to the server(s) on your local network. You may enter a single port number or a range of port numbers to be forwarded, and the local IP address of the desired server. The port number identifies a service; for example, web service is on port 80 and FTP on port 21. In some cases, such as for unknown services or where one server can support more than one service (for example both FTP and web service), it might be better to specify a range of port numbers.

In addition to the servers for specified services, NAT supports a default server. A service request that does not have a server explicitly designated for it is forwarded to the default server. If the default is not defined, the service request is simply discarded.

Note: Many residential broadband ISP accounts do not allow you to run any server processes (such as a Web or FTP server) from your location. Your ISP may periodically check for servers and may suspend your account if it discovers any active services at your location. If you are unsure, refer to your ISP.

Port forwarding allows you to define the local servers to which the incoming services will be forwarded. To change your Router's port forwarding settings, click **Network** > **NAT** > **Application**. The screen appears as shown.

Note: If you do not assign a **Default Server IP address** in the **NAT** > **General** screen, the Router discards all packets received for ports that are not specified in this screen or remote management.

Refer to Appendix E on page 261 for port numbers commonly used for particular services.

Figure 100 Network > NAT > Application

_	lication Rule				
			1. .		
Servic	e Name		I	User Defined 💌	
Port			(Ex: 10-20,30,40)	(Ex: 10-20,30,40)	
Serve	r IP Address		0.0.0.0		
- 					
Ар	plication Rules	s Summary			
#	Active	Name	Port	Server IP Address	Modify

Table 64	Network	>	NAT	>	Application
----------	---------	---	-----	---	-------------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION			
Add Application Rule				
Active	Select the check box to enable this rule and the requested service can be forwarded to the host with a specified internal IP address.			
	Clear the checkbox to disallow forwarding of these ports to an inside server without having to delete the entry.			
Service Name	Type a name (of up to 31 printable characters) to identify this rule in the first field next to Service Name . Otherwise, select a predefined service in the second field next to Service Name . The predefined service name and port number(s) will display in the Service Name and Port fields.			
Port	Type a port number(s) to define the service to be forwarded to the specified server.			
	To specify a range of ports, enter a hyphen (-) between the first port and the last port, such as 10-20.			
	To specify two or more non-consecutive port numbers, separate them by a comma without spaces, such as 123,567.			
Server IPType the IP address of the server on your LAN that receives packets from the portAddressspecified in the Port field.				

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Application Rules Summary			
#	This is the number of an individual port forwarding server entry.		
Active	This icon is turned on when the rule is enabled.		
Name	This field displays a name to identify this rule.		
Port	This field displays the port number(s).		
Server IP Address	This field displays the inside IP address of the server.		
Modify	Click the Edit icon to display and modify an existing rule setting in the fields under Add Application Rule . Click the Remove icon to delete a rule.		
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.		
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

Table 64 Network > NAT > Application (continued)

16.5 NAT Advanced Screen

Some services use a dedicated range of ports on the client side and a dedicated range of ports on the server side. With regular port forwarding you set a forwarding port in NAT to forward a service (coming in from the server on the WAN) to the IP address of a computer on the client side (LAN). The problem is that port forwarding only forwards a service to a single LAN IP address. In order to use the same service on a different LAN computer, you have to manually replace the LAN computer's IP address in the forwarding port with another LAN computer's IP address.

Trigger port forwarding solves this problem by allowing computers on the LAN to dynamically take turns using the service. The Router records the IP address of a LAN computer that sends traffic to the WAN to request a service with a specific port number and protocol (a "trigger" port). When the Router's WAN port receives a response with a specific port number and protocol ("incoming" port), the Router forwards the traffic to the LAN IP address of the computer that sent the request. After that computer's connection for that service closes, another computer on the LAN can use the service in the same manner. This way you do not need to configure a new IP address each time you want a different LAN computer to use the application.

To change your Router's trigger port settings, click **Network > NAT > Advanced**. The screen appears as shown.

Note: Only one LAN computer can use a trigger port (range) at a time.

Figure 101 Network > NAT > Advance	d
------------------------------------	---

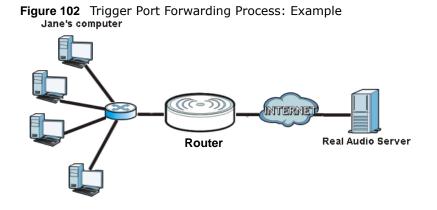
General	Application	Advanced				
Applicati	ion Rules Sum	тагу				
Po	rt Triggering F	tules				
#	Name		Incoming		Trigger	
		Port	End Port	Port	End Port	
1		0	0	0	0	
2		0	0	0	0	
3		0	0	0	0	
4		0	0	0	0	
5		0	0	0	0	
6		0	0	0	0	
7		0	0	0	0	
8		0	0	0	0	
9		0	0	0	0	
10		0	0	0	0	
11		0	0	0	0	
12		0	0	0	0	
			Apply Reset			

Table 65Network > NAT > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
#	This is the rule index number (read-only).		
Name	Type a unique name (up to 15 characters) for identification purposes. All characters are permitted - including spaces.		
Incoming	Incoming is a port (or a range of ports) that a server on the WAN uses when it sends out a particular service. The Router forwards the traffic with this port (or range of ports) to the client computer on the LAN that requested the service.		
Start Port	Type a port number or the starting port number in a range of port numbers.		
End Port	Type a port number or the ending port number in a range of port numbers.		
Trigger	The trigger port is a port (or a range of ports) that causes (or triggers) the Router to record the IP address of the LAN computer that sent the traffic to a server on the WAN.		
Start Port	Type a port number or the starting port number in a range of port numbers.		
End Port	Type a port number or the ending port number in a range of port numbers.		
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.		
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.		

16.5.1 Trigger Port Forwarding Example

The following is an example of trigger port forwarding.



- 1 Jane requests a file from the Real Audio server (port 7070).
- 2 Port 7070 is a "trigger" port and causes the Router to record Jane's computer IP address. The Router associates Jane's computer IP address with the "incoming" port range of 6970-7170.
- 3 The Real Audio server responds using a port number ranging between 6970-7170.
- 4 The Router forwards the traffic to Jane's computer IP address.
- 5 Only Jane can connect to the Real Audio server until the connection is closed or times out. The Router times out in three minutes with UDP (User Datagram Protocol), or two hours with TCP/IP (Transfer Control Protocol/Internet Protocol).

16.5.2 Two Points To Remember About Trigger Ports

1 Trigger events only happen on data that is going coming from inside the Router and going to the outside.

If an application needs a continuous data stream, that port (range) will be tied up so that another computer on the LAN can't trigger it.

Dynamic DNS

17.1 Overview

Dynamic DNS (DDNS) services let you use a domain name with a dynamic IP address.

17.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Dynamic DNS** screen (Section 17.4 on page 145) to enable DDNS and configure the DDNS settings on the Router.

17.3 What You Need To Know

Dynamic DNS allows you to update your current dynamic IP address with one or many dynamic DNS services so that anyone can contact you (in NetMeeting, CU-SeeMe, etc.). You can also access your FTP server or Web site on your own computer using a domain name (for instance myhost.dhs.org, where myhost is a name of your choice) that will never change instead of using an IP address that changes each time you reconnect. Your friends or relatives will always be able to call you even if they don't know your IP address.

17.4 Dynamic DNS Screen

To change your Router's DDNS, click **Network > DDNS**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 103 Network > D	ONS
Dynamic DNS Setup	
Service Provider : Host Name :	WWW.DynDNS.ORG
User Name : Password :	
	Apply Reset

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable Dynamic DNS	Select this check box to use dynamic DNS.
Service Provider	Select the name of your Dynamic DNS service provider.
Host Name	Enter a host names in the field provided. You can specify up to two host names in the field separated by a comma (",").
User Name	Enter your user name.
Password	Enter the password assigned to you.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

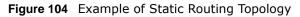
Table 66Network > DDNS

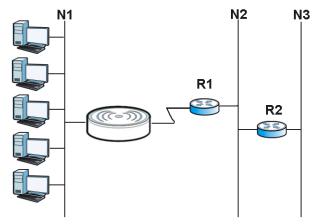
Static Route

18.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure static routes for your Router.

Each remote node specifies only the network to which the gateway is directly connected, and the Router has no knowledge of the networks beyond. For instance, the Router knows about network N2 in the following figure through remote node Router 1. However, the Router is unable to route a packet to network N3 because it doesn't know that there is a route through the same remote node Router 1 (via gateway Router 2). The static routes are for you to tell the Router about the networks beyond the remote nodes.





18.2 What You Can Do

Use the IP Static Route screen (Section 18.3 on page 148) to view, add and delete routes.

18.3 IP Static Route Screen

Click Network > Static Route to open the IP Static Route screen.

Figure 105 Network > Static Route

IC RU	outing Sett	ings						
loute	Name							
estin	ation IP Add	ress						
Sub	net Mask			-				
atew	ay IP Addre	ss						
letric								
rerric								
ietric			LAN	•				
nterfa			LAN	•				
nterfa	ice		LAN	•				
Add	i Rule	lules Summ						
Add	i Rule	Rules Summ Name		Gateway	Metric	Interface	Delete	
Add Ap	IRUIE		агу	Gateway	Metric 0	Interface	Delete	
Add Add Ap No.	Rule	Name	ary Destination	Gateway			Delete	
Add Add No. 1	I Rule	Name default	ary Destination 239.255.255.250	Gateway 0.0.00	0	LAN	Delete	
Add Add No. 1 2	Rule plication F Active \bigcirc	Name default default	ary Destination 239.255.255.250 172.23.26.0	Gateway 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0	0	LAN WAN	Delete	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Static Routing Se	ettings
Route Name	Enter a the name that describes or identifies this route.
Destination IP Address	Enter the IP network address of the final destination.
IP Subnet Netmask	This is the subnet to which the route's final destination belongs.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the the IP address of the gateway.
Metric	Assign a number to identify the route.
Add Rule	Click this to add the IP static route.
Application Rules	s Summary
No.	This is the number of an individual static route.
Active	The rules are always on and this is indicated by the icon.
Name	This is the name that describes or identifies this route.
Destination	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination. Routing is always based on network number.
Gateway	This is the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is a router or switch on the same network segment as the device's LAN or WAN port. The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations.

Table 67 Network > Static Route

Table of Networ	
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Metric	This is the number assigned to the route.
Delete	Click the Delete icon to remove a static route from the Router. A window displays asking you to confirm that you want to delete the route.

Table 67 Network > Static Route

RIP

19.1 Overview

Routing Information Protocol (RIP) is an interior or intra-domain routing protocol that uses distance-vector routing algorithms. RIP is used on the Internet and is common in the NetWare environment as a method for exchanging routing information between routers.

19.2 What You Can Do

Use the **RIP** screen (Section 19.3 on page 151) to enable RIPv1 or RIPv2, which are LAN broadcast protocols.

19.3 RIP Screen

Use this screen to enable RIPv1 or RIPv2, which are LAN broadcast protocols. Click **Network** > **RIP**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 106	Network > RIP	
RIP		
RIP Setup RIP :		None 💌
		Apply

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 68 Network > RIP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
RIP	Select the RIPv1 or RIPv2 you want the Router to use.
	Otherwise select None .
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

20

Firewall

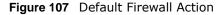
20.1 Overview

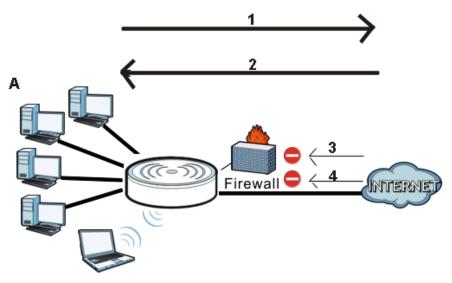
This chapter shows you how to enable and configure the firewall that protects your Router and your LAN from unwanted or malicious traffic.

Enable the firewall to protect your LAN computers from attacks by hackers on the Internet and control access between the LAN and WAN. By default the firewall:

- allows traffic that originates from your LAN computers to go to all of the networks.
- blocks traffic that originates on the other networks from going to the LAN.

The following figure illustrates the default firewall action. User **A** can initiate an IM (Instant Messaging) session from the LAN to the WAN (1). Return traffic for this session is also allowed (2). However other traffic initiated from the WAN is blocked (3 and 4).





20.2 What You Can Do

- Use the General (Section 20.4 on page 154) screen to enable or disable the Router's firewall.
- Use the **Services** screen (Section 20.5 on page 155) screen enable service blocking, enter/ delete/modify the services you want to block and the date/time you want to block them.

20.3 What You Need To Know

The Router's firewall feature physically separates the LAN and the WAN and acts as a secure gateway for all data passing between the networks.

It is designed to protect against Denial of Service (DoS) attacks when activated (click the **General** tab under **Firewall** and then click the **Enable Firewall** check box). The Router's purpose is to allow a private Local Area Network (LAN) to be securely connected to the Internet. The Router can be used to prevent theft, destruction and modification of data, as well as log events, which may be important to the security of your network.

The Router is installed between the LAN and a broadband modem connecting to the Internet. This allows it to act as a secure gateway for all data passing between the Internet and the LAN.

The Router has one Ethernet WAN port and four Ethernet LAN ports, which are used to physically separate the network into two areas. The WAN (Wide Area Network) port attaches to the broadband (cable or DSL) modem to the Internet.

The LAN (Local Area Network) port attaches to a network of computers, which needs security from the outside world. These computers will have access to Internet services such as e-mail, FTP and the World Wide Web. However, "inbound access" is not allowed (by default) unless the remote host is authorized to use a specific service.

20.4 General Firewall Screen

Use this screen to enable or disable the Router's firewall, and set up firewall logs. Click **Security** > **Firewall** to open the **General** screen.

Figure 108 Security > Firewall > General

General	Services		
Firewall S			
	Apply	Reset	

Table 69	Security	>	Firewall	>	General
----------	----------	---	----------	---	---------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable Firewall	Select this check box to activate the firewall. The Router performs access control and protects against Denial of Service (DoS) attacks when the firewall is activated.
Apply	Click Apply to save the settings.
Reset	Click Reset to start configuring this screen again.

20.5 Services Screen

If an outside user attempts to probe an unsupported port on your Router, an ICMP response packet is automatically returned. This allows the outside user to know the Router exists. Use this screen to prevent the ICMP response packet from being sent. This keeps outsiders from discovering your Router when unsupported ports are probed.

You can also use this screen to enable service blocking, enter/delete/modify the services you want to block and the date/time you want to block them.

Click Security > Firewall > Services. The screen appears as shown next.

Figure 109 Security > Firewall > Services

CMP			Law Street					
Respond to Ping o	I N :		Disable 💌					
Apply								
Enable Firewall Rul	e							
🗖 Enable Firewa	all Rule							
Apply								
Add Firewall Rule								
Service Name :			<u> </u>					
MAC address								
Dest IP Address								
Source IP Addres	s		0					
Protocol			None 💌					
Dest Port Range			-					
Source Port Rang	e		-	_				
Add Rule								
Salaria da de								
Firewall Rule								
Firewall Rule								
# Service Name	MAC Address	Dest IP	Source IP	Protocol	Dest Port Range	Source Port Range	Action	Dele
1 TESTMAIL	00:1C:C4:84:E0:4B	192.168.1.33	172.168.22.14	тср	20	21	Drop	T
1			Reset	1				

Table 70	Security	>	Firewall	>	Services
----------	----------	---	----------	---	----------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol is a message control and error-reporting protocol between a host server and a gateway to the Internet. ICMP uses Internet Protocol (IP) datagrams, but the messages are processed by the TCP/IP software and directly apparent to the application user.
Respond to Ping on	The Router will not respond to any incoming Ping requests when Disable is selected. Select LAN to reply to incoming LAN Ping requests. Select WAN to reply to incoming WAN Ping requests. Otherwise select LAN & WAN to reply to all incoming LAN and WAN Ping requests.
Apply	Click Apply to save the settings.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Enable Firewall R	ule		
Enable Firewall Rule	Select this check box to activate the firewall rules that you define (see Add Firewall Rule below)		
Apply	Click Apply to save the settings.		
Add Firewall Rule			
Service Name	Enter a name that identifies or describes the firewall rule.		
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the computer for which the firewall rule applies.		
Dest IP Address	Enter the IP address of the computer to which traffic for the application or service is entering.		
	The Router applies the firewall rule to traffic initiating from this computer.		
Source IP	Enter the IP address of the computer that initializes traffic for the application or service.		
Address	The Router applies the firewall rule to traffic initiating from this computer.		
Protocol	Select the protocol (TCP , UDP , ICMP or None) used to transport the packets for which you want to apply the firewall rule.		
Dest Port Range	Enter the port number/range of the destination that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.		
Source Port Range	Enter the port number/range of the source that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.		
Add Rule	Click Add to save the firewall rule.		
Firewall Rule			
#	This is your firewall rule number. The ordering of your rules is important as rules are applied in turn.		
Service Name	This is a name that identifies or describes the firewall rule.		
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the computer for which the firewall rule applies.		
Dest IP Address	This is the IP address of the computer to which traffic for the application or service is entering.		
Source IP Address	This is the IP address of the computer from which traffic for the application or service is initialized.		
Protocol	This is the protocol (TCP , UDP , ICMP or None) used to transport the packets for which you want to apply the firewall rule.		
Dest Port Range	This is the port number/range of the destination that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.		
Source Port Range	This is the port number/range of the source that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.		
Action	Drop - Traffic matching the conditions of the firewall rule are stopped.		
Delete	Click this to remove the firewall rule.		
Reset	Click Reset to start configuring this screen again.		

Table 70 Security > Firewall > Services (continued)

See Appendix E on page 261 for commonly used services and port numbers.

Content Filter

21.1 Overview

This chapter provides a brief overview of content filtering using the embedded web GUI.

Internet content filtering allows you to create and enforce Internet access policies tailored to your needs. Content filtering is the ability to block certain web features or specific URL keywords.

21.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Content Filter** (Section 21.4 on page 158) screen to restrict web features, add keywords for blocking and designate a trusted computer.

21.3 What You Need To Know

Content filtering allows you to block certain web features, such as cookies, and/or block access to specific web sites. For example, you can configure one policy that blocks John Doe's access to arts and entertainment web pages.

21.3.1 Content Filtering Profiles

A content filtering profile conveniently stores your custom settings for the following features.

Restrict Web Features

The Router can disable web proxies and block web features such as ActiveX controls, Java applets and cookies.

Keyword Blocking URL Checking

The Router checks the URL's domain name (or IP address) and file path separately when performing keyword blocking.

The URL's domain name or IP address is the characters that come before the first slash in the URL. For example, with the URL <u>www.zyxel.com.tw/news/pressroom.php</u>, the domain name is <u>www.zyxel.com.tw</u>.

The file path is the characters that come after the first slash in the URL. For example, with the URL <u>www.zyxel.com.tw/news/pressroom.php</u>, the file path is <u>news/pressroom.php</u>.

Since the Router checks the URL's domain name (or IP address) and file path separately, it will not find items that go across the two. For example, with the URL <u>www.zyxel.com.tw/news/</u> <u>pressroom.php</u>, the Router would find "tw" in the domain name (<u>www.zyxel.com.tw</u>). It would also find "news" in the file path (<u>news/pressroom.php</u>) but it would not find "tw/news".

21.4 Content Filter Screen

Use this screen to restrict web features, add keywords for blocking and designate a trusted computer.

Click Security > Content Filter to open the Content Filter screen.

Figure 110 Security > Content Filter > Content Filter

Content Filter			
Trusted IP Setup A trusted compute Trusted Computer Address:		icked resources. 0.0.0.0 means	there is no trusted computer.
Restrict Web Featu	res		
ActiveX	🗖 Java	Cookies	🔲 Web Proxy
Keyword Blocking Enable URL Key Keyword test 2 Keyword List test 1 test 2 Delete	/word Blocking Clear All		Add
		Apply	

Table 71	Security >	Content Filter >	Content Filter
----------	------------	------------------	----------------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Trusted IP Setup	To enable this feature, type an IP address of any one of the computers in your network that you want to have as a trusted computer. This allows the trusted computer to have full access to all features that are configured to be blocked by content filtering. Leave this field blank to have no trusted computers.
Restrict Web Features	Select the box(es) to restrict a feature. When you download a page containing a restricted feature, that part of the web page will appear blank or grayed out.
ActiveX	A tool for building dynamic and active Web pages and distributed object applications. When you visit an ActiveX Web site, ActiveX controls are downloaded to your browser, where they remain in case you visit the site again.
Java	A programming language and development environment for building downloadable Web components or Internet and intranet business applications of all kinds.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Cookies	Used by Web servers to track usage and provide service based on ID.		
Web Proxy	A server that acts as an intermediary between a user and the Internet to provide security, administrative control, and caching service. When a proxy server is located on the WAN it is possible for LAN users to circumvent content filtering by pointing to this proxy server.		
Enable URL Keyword Blocking	The Router can block Web sites with URLs that contain certain keywords in the domain name or IP address. For example, if the keyword "bad" was enabled, all sites containing this keyword in the domain name or IP address will be blocked, e.g., URL http:// www.website.com/bad.html would be blocked. Select this check box to enable this feature.		
Keyword	Type a keyword in this field. You may use any character (up to 64 characters). Wildcards are not allowed. You can also enter a numerical IP address.		
Keyword List	This list displays the keywords already added.		
Add	Click Add after you have typed a keyword.		
	Repeat this procedure to add other keywords. Up to 64 keywords are allowed.		
	When you try to access a web page containing a keyword, you will get a message telling you that the content filter is blocking this request.		
Delete	Highlight a keyword in the lower box and click Delete to remove it. The keyword disappears from the text box after you click Apply .		
Clear All	Click this button to remove all of the listed keywords.		
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes.		
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh		

 Table 71
 Security > Content Filter > Content Filter (continued)

Bandwidth Management

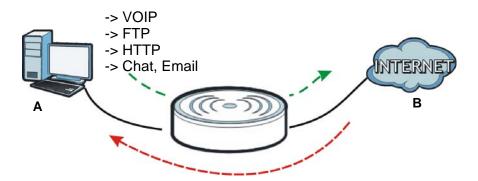
22.1 Overview

This chapter contains information about configuring bandwidth management and editing rules.

ZyXEL's Bandwidth Management allows you to specify bandwidth management rules based on an application.

In the figure below, uplink traffic goes from the LAN device (**A**) to the WAN device (**B**). Bandwidth management is applied before sending the packets out to the WAN. Downlink traffic comes back from the WAN device (**B**) to the LAN device (**A**). Bandwidth management is applied before sending the traffic out to LAN.

Figure 111 Bandwidth Management Example



You can allocate specific amounts of bandwidth capacity (bandwidth budgets) to individual applications (like VoIP, Web, FTP, and E-mail for example).

22.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **General** screen (Section 22.4 on page 162) to enable bandwidth management and assign bandwidth values.
- Use the **Advanced** screen (Section 22.5 on page 162) to configure bandwidth managements rule for the pre-defined services and applications.
- Use the **Monitor** screen (Section 22.6 on page 166) to view the amount of network bandwidth that applications running in the network are using.

22.3 What You Need To Know

The sum of the bandwidth allotments that apply to the WAN interface (LAN to WAN, WLAN to WAN) must be less than or equal to the **Upstream Bandwidth** that you configure in the **Bandwidth Management Advanced** screen (Section 22.5 on page 162).

The sum of the bandwidth allotments that apply to the LAN interface (WAN to LAN, WAN to WLAN) must be less than or equal to the **Downstream Bandwidth** that you configure in the **Bandwidth Management Advanced** screen Section 22.5 on page 162.

22.4 General Screen

Use this screen to have the Router apply bandwidth management.

Click **Management** > **Bandwidth Management** to open the bandwidth management **General** screen.

Figure 112 Management > Bandwidth Management > General

General	Advanced	Monitor	
bm title			
🗆 Enable	e Bandwidth M	anadement	
		<u>0</u>	
		VlggA	Reset
		(pp))	Rober

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 72	Management >	 Bandwidth 	Management >	General
----------	--------------	-------------------------------	--------------	---------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable Bandwidth	This field allows you to have Router apply bandwidth management.
Management	Enable bandwidth management to give traffic that matches a bandwidth rule priority over traffic that does not match a bandwidth rule.
	Enabling bandwidth management also allows you to control the maximum or minimum amounts of bandwidth that can be used by traffic that matches a bandwidth rule.
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

22.5 Advanced Screen

Use this screen to configure bandwidth management rules for the pre-defined services or applications.

You can also use this screen to configure bandwidth management rule for other services or applications that are not on the pre-defined list of Router. Additionally, you can define the source and destination IP addresses and port for a service or application.

Note: The two tables shown in this screen can be configured and applied at the same time.

Click **Management** > **Bandwidth Management** > **Advanced** to open the bandwidth management **Advanced** screen.

	n Bandwidth 32 eam Bandwidth						
plicatior	ı List						
#	Priority	Ca	ategory	Service		Advanced	Settin
1	High 💌	Gam	e Console	C XBox	Live	2	
				🗖 PlayS	tation	2	
				🗆 MSN (Game Zone	2	
				🗆 Battle	net	2	
2	High 💌		VoIP	🗆 VolP		2	
3	High 💌	Instant	Messenger	🗖 Instar	nt Messenger	2	
4	High 💌	Wet) Surfing	🗆 Web S	Surfing	2	
5	High 💌	P:	2P/FTP	🗖 FTP		2	
				🗆 eMule		2	
				🗆 BitTor		2	
6	High 💌	E	-Mail	🗖 E-Mai	1	2	
er-define	ed Service						
#	Enable	Direction	Servic	e Name	Category	M	odify
1		To LAN			Game Console	- 2	Ī
2		To LAN			Game Console	-	Ū
3		To LAN			Game Console	-	Ť
4		To LAN			Game Console	•	
5		To LAN			Game Console	•	
6		To LAN			Game Console	- 2	Ū
7		To LAN			Game Console	- 2	
8		To LAN 💌			Game Console	- 2	

Figure 113 Management > Bandwidth Management > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
Management Bar	ndwidth		
Upstream Bandwidth	Select the total amount of bandwidth (from 64 Kilobits to 32 Megabits) that you want to dedicate to uplink traffic.		
	This is traffic from LAN/WLAN to WAN.		
Downstream Bandwidth	Select the total amount of bandwidth (from 64 Kilobits to 32 Megabits) that you want to dedicate to uplink traffic.		
	This is traffic from WAN to LAN/WLAN.		
Application List	Use this table to allocate specific amounts of bandwidth based on a pre-defined service.		

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
#	This is the number of an individual bandwidth management rule.	
Priority	Select a priority from the drop down list box. Choose High, Mid or Low.	
	• High - Select this for voice traffic or video that is especially sensitive to jitter (jitter is the variations in delay).	
	• Mid - Select this for "excellent effort" or better than best effort and would include important business traffic that can tolerate some delay.	
	• Low - Select this for non-critical "background" traffic such as bulk transfers that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users.	
Category	This is the category where a service belongs.	
Service	This is the name of the service.	
	Select the check box to have the Router apply this bandwidth management rule.	
Advanced Setting	Click the Edit icon to open the Rule Configuration screen where you can modify the rule.	
User-defined Service	Use this table to allocate specific amounts of bandwidth to specific applications or services you specify.	
#	This is the number of an individual bandwidth management rule.	
Enable	Select this check box to have the Router apply this bandwidth management rule.	
Direction	Select LAN to apply bandwidth management to traffic from WAN to LAN.	
	Select WAN to apply bandwidth management to traffic from LAN/WLAN to WAN.	
	Select WLAN to apply bandwidth management to traffic from WAN to WLAN.	
Service Name	Enter a descriptive name for the bandwidth management rule.	
Category	This is the category where a service belongs.	
Modify	Click the Edit icon to open the Rule Configuration screen. Modify an existing rule or create a new rule in the Rule Configuration screen. See Section 22.5.2 on page 165 for more information.	
	Click the Remove icon to delete a rule.	
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings.	
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.	

 Table 73
 Management > Bandwidth Management > Advanced (continued)

22.5.1 Rule Configuration: Application Rule Configuration

If you want to edit a bandwidth management rule for a pre-defined service or application, click the **Edit** icon in the **Application List** table of the **Advanced** screen. The following screen displays.

Figure 114	Bandwidth Manag	ement Rule Co	onfiguration: A	Application List
	Banamathathanag		sinigaracioni i	application List

le C	Configurat	ion- MSN Gam	e Zone					
#	Enable	Direction	Bandw	vidth		Destination Port	Source Port	Protoco
1		LAN /WLAN	Minimum Bandwidth	10	(kbps)		-	TCP
2		LAN /WLAN	Minimum Bandwidth 💌	10	(kbps)		U	UDP
3		WAN	Minimum Bandwidth	10	(kbps)	e	-	TCP
4		WAN	Minimum Bandwidth 💌	10	(kbps)	-	-	UDP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
#	This is the number of an individual bandwidth management rule.	
Enable	Select an interface's check box to enable bandwidth management on that interface.	
Direction	These read-only labels represent the physical interfaces. Bandwidth management applies to all traffic flowing out of the router through the interface, regardless of the traffic's source. Traffic redirect or IP alias may cause LAN-to-LAN traffic to pass through the Router and be managed by bandwidth management.	
Bandwidth	Select Maximum Bandwidth or Minimum Bandwidth and specify the maximum or minimum bandwidth allowed for the rule in kilobits per second.	
Destination Port	This is the port number of the destination that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.	
	See Appendix E on page 261 for some common services and port numbers.	
Source Port	This is the port number of the source that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.	
	See Appendix E on page 261 for some common services and port numbers.	
Protocol	This is the protocol (TCP, UDP or user-defined) used for the service.	
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings.	
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.	

 Table 74
 Bandwidth Management Rule Configuration: Application List

22.5.2 Rule Configuration: User Defined Service Rule Configuration

If you want to edit a bandwidth management rule for other applications or services, click the **Edit** icon in the **User-defined Service** table of the **Advanced** screen. The following screen displays.

General Advanced Monitor	
Rule Configuration -	
BW Budget	Minimum Bandwidth 🔽 10 (kbps)
Destination Address	0.0.0.0
Destination Subnet Netmask	0.0.0.0
Destination Port	0
Source Address	0.0.0.0
Source Subnet Netmask	0.0.0.0
Source Port	0
Protocol	TCP 0
	Apply Cancel

Figure 115 Bandwidth Management Rule Configuration: User-defined Service

LABEL	DESCRIPTION		
BW Budget	Select Maximum Bandwidth or Minimum Bandwidth and specify the maximum or minimum bandwidth allowed for the rule in kilobits per second.		
Destination Address	Enter the IP address of the destination computer. The Router applies bandwidth management to the service or application that is entering this computer.		
Destination Subnet Netmask	Enter the subnet netmask of the destination of the traffic for which the bandwidth management rule applies.		
Destination Port	This is the port number of the destination that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.		
Source Address	Enter the IP address of the computer that initializes traffic for the application or service. The Router applies bandwidth management to traffic initiating from this computer.		
Source Subnet Netmask	Enter the subnet netmask of the computer initiating the traffic for which the bandwidth management rule applies.		
Source Port	This is the port number of the source that define the traffic type, for example TCP port 80 defines web traffic.		
Protocol	Select the protocol (TCP, UDP, User defined) for which the bandwidth management rule applies.		
	If you select User-defined , enter the protocol for which the bandwidth management rule applies. For example, ICMP for ping traffic.		
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings.		
Cancel	Click Cancel to exit this screen without saving.		

 Table 75
 Bandwidth Management Rule Configuration: User-defined Service

See Appendix E on page 261 for commonly used services and port numbers.

22.6 Monitor Screen

Use this screen to view the amount of network bandwidth that applications running in the network are using.

The bandwidth is measured in kilobits per second (kbps).

The monitor shows what kinds of applications are running in the network, the maximum kbps that each application can use, as well as the percentage of bandwidth it is using.

BW MGMT Monitor		
Monitor		
XBox Live		0/32768 kbps
XBox Live	0%	0/32768 kbps
VolP	0%	0/32768 kbps
FTP	0%	0/32768 kbps
eMule	0%	0/32768 kbps
BitTorrent	0%	0/32768 kbps
E-Mail	0%	0/32768 kbps
Instant Messenger	0%	0/32768 kbps

Figure 116 Management > Bandwidth Management > Monitor

22.6.1 Predefined Bandwidth Management Services

The following is a description of some services that you can select and to which you can apply media bandwidth management in the **Management > Bandwidth Management > Advanced** screen.

SERVICE	DESCRIPTION	
FTP	File Transfer Program enables fast transfer of files, including large files that may not be possible by e-mail.	
www	The World Wide Web (WWW) is an Internet system to distribute graphical, hyper-linked information, based on Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) - a client/server protocol for World Wide Web. The Web is not synonymous with the Internet; rather, it is just one serv on the Internet. Other services on the Internet include Internet Relay Chat and Newsgroups. The Web is accessed through use of a browser.	
E-Mail	Electronic mail consists of messages sent through a computer network to specific groups or individuals. Here are some default ports for e-mail:	
VoIP (SIP)	Sending voice signals over the Internet is called Voice over IP or VoIP. Session Initiated Protocol (SIP) is an internationally recognized standard for implementing VoIP. SIP is an application-layer control (signaling) protocol that handles the setting up, altering and tearing down of voice and multimedia sessions over the Internet.	
	SIP is transported primarily over UDP but can also be transported over TCP.	
BitTorrent	BitTorrent is a free P2P (peer-to-peer) sharing tool allowing you to distribute large software and media files. BitTorrent requires you to search for a file with a searching engine yourself. It distributes files by corporation and trading, that is, the client downloads the file in small pieces and share the pieces with other peers to get other half of the file.	
Gaming	Online gaming services lets you play multiplayer games on the Internet via broadband technology. As of this writing, your Router supports Xbox, Playstation, Battlenet and MSN Game Zone.	

 Table 76
 Media Bandwidth Management Setup: Services

Remote Management

23.1 Overview

This chapter provides information on the Remote Management screens.

Remote Management allows you to manage your Router from a remote location through the following interfaces:

- LAN and WAN
- LAN only
- WAN only

Note: The Router is managed using the Web Configurator.

23.2 What You Can Do

Use the **WWW** screen (Section 23.4 on page 169) to define the interface/s from which the Router can be managed remotely and specify a secure client that can manage the Router.

23.3 What You Need to Know

Remote management over LAN or WAN will not work when:

- 1 The IP address in the **Secured Client IP Address** field (Section 23.4 on page 169) does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the Router will disconnect the session immediately.
- 2 There is already another remote management session. You may only have one remote management session running at one time.
- 3 There is a firewall rule that blocks it.

23.3.1 Remote Management and NAT

When NAT is enabled:

- Use the Router's WAN IP address when configuring from the WAN.
- Use the Router's LAN IP address when configuring from the LAN.

23.3.2 System Timeout

There is a default system management idle timeout of five minutes (three hundred seconds). The Router automatically logs you out if the management session remains idle for longer than this timeout period. The management session does not time out when a statistics screen is polling. You can change the timeout period in the **System** screen

23.4 WWW Screen

To change your Router's remote management settings, click **Management > Remote Management > WWW**.

Figure 117	Management >	Remote	Management	>	www
inguic in	riunugement >	Remote	nunugemene	-	** ** **

www	
Server Port :	80
Server Access :	LAN
Secured Client IP Address :	All C Selected

LABEL	DESCRIPTION	
Server Port	You may change the server port number for a service if needed, however you must use the same port number in order to use that service for remote management.	
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the Router using this service.	
Secured Client IP Address	Select All to allow all computes to access the Router. Otherwise, check Selected and specify the IP address of the computer that can access the Router.	
Apply	Click Apply to save your customized settings and exit this screen.	
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.	

Universal Plug-and-Play (UPnP)

24.1 Overview

This chapter introduces the UPnP feature in the web configurator.

Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) is a distributed, open networking standard that uses TCP/IP for simple peer-to-peer network connectivity between devices. A UPnP device can dynamically join a network, obtain an IP address, convey its capabilities and learn about other devices on the network. In turn, a device can leave a network smoothly and automatically when it is no longer in use.

24.2 What You Can Do

Use the UPnP screen (Section 24.4 on page 172) to enable UPnP on your Router.

24.3 What You Need to Know

UPnP hardware is identified as an icon in the Network Connections folder (Windows XP). Each UPnP compatible device installed on your network will appear as a separate icon. Selecting the icon of a UPnP device will allow you to access the information and properties of that device.

24.3.1 NAT Traversal

UPnP NAT traversal automates the process of allowing an application to operate through NAT. UPnP network devices can automatically configure network addressing, announce their presence in the network to other UPnP devices and enable exchange of simple product and service descriptions. NAT traversal allows the following:

- Dynamic port mapping
- Learning public IP addresses
- Assigning lease times to mappings

Windows Messenger is an example of an application that supports NAT traversal and UPnP.

See the NAT chapter for more information on NAT.

24.3.2 Cautions with UPnP

The automated nature of NAT traversal applications in establishing their own services and opening firewall ports may present network security issues. Network information and configuration may also be obtained and modified by users in some network environments.

When a UPnP device joins a network, it announces its presence with a multicast message. For security reasons, the Router allows multicast messages on the LAN only.

All UPnP-enabled devices may communicate freely with each other without additional configuration. Disable UPnP if this is not your intention.

24.4 UPnP Screen

Use this screen to enable UPnP on your Router.

Click **Management** > **UPnP** to display the screen shown next.

Figure 118	Management >	• UPnP
------------	--------------	--------

General		
UPnP Setup		
Device Name: ZyXEL NBG-419N Inte	ernet Sharing Gateway	
Enable the Universal Plug and Pl	ay (UPnP) Feature	
	Apply Reset	

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 78	Management :	> UPnP
----------	--------------	--------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable the Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) Feature	Select this check box to activate UPnP. Be aware that anyone could use a UPnP application to open the web configurator's login screen without entering the Router's IP address (although you must still enter the password to access the web configurator).
Apply	Click Apply to save the setting to the Router.
Reset	Click Reset to return to the previously saved settings.

24.5 Technical Refereance

The sections show examples of using UPnP.

24.5.1 Using UPnP in Windows XP Example

This section shows you how to use the UPnP feature in Windows XP. You must already have UPnP installed in Windows XP and UPnP activated on the Router.

Make sure the computer is connected to a LAN port of the Router. Turn on your computer and the Router.

24.5.1.1 Auto-discover Your UPnP-enabled Network Device

- 1 Click start and Control Panel. Double-click Network Connections. An icon displays under Internet Gateway.
- 2 Right-click the icon and select Properties.

Figure 119 Network Connections



3 In the Internet Connection Properties window, click Settings to see the port mappings there were automatically created.

Figure 120 Internet Connection Properties



You may edit or delete the port mappings or click Add to manually add port mappings.Figure 121 Internet Connection Properties: Advanced Settings

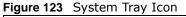


Figure 122 Internet Connection Properties: Advanced Settings: Add

Service Settings	? 🛛
Description of service:	
Test	
Name or IP address (for example 192 computer hosting this service on you	2.168.0.12) of the r network:
192.168.1.11	
External Port number for this service:	
143	● TCP ● UDP
Internal Port number for this service:	
143	
	OK Cancel

Note: When the UPnP-enabled device is disconnected from your computer, all port mappings will be deleted automatically.

5 Select **Show icon in notification area when connected** option and click **OK**. An icon displays in the system tray.





6 Double-click on the icon to display your current Internet connection status.

Figure 124 Internet Connection Status

neral		
Internet Gateway	,	
Status:		Connected
Duration:		00:00:56
Speed:		100.0 Mbps
Activity		
Internet	Internet Gateway	My Computer
()	🌍	<u> </u>
Packets:	9	9
Packets: Sent:	8	618
Received:	5,943	746
Properties	Disable	

24.5.2 Web Configurator Easy Access

With UPnP, you can access the web-based configurator on the Router without finding out the IP address of the Router first. This comes helpful if you do not know the IP address of the Router.

Follow the steps below to access the web configurator.

- 1 Click Start and then Control Panel.
- 2 Double-click Network Connections.

3 Select My Network Places under Other Places.

Figure 125 Network Connections

Network Connections	
e Edit View Favorites Tools	Advanced Help
🕽 Back 🔹 🕥 - 🏂 🔎 S	earch 😥 Folders 🔢 -
iress 🔇 Network Connections	
Network Tasks	Internet Gateway
 Create a new connection Set up a home or small office network 	Internet Connection Disabled Internet Connection
	LAN or High-Speed Internet
 Network Troubleshooter Other Places 	Local Area Connection Enabled Accton EN1207D-TX PCI Fast
Control Panel My Network Places My Documents My Computer	
Details Network Connections Paystem Folder	

- An icon with the description for each UPnP-enabled device displays under Local Network. 4
- Right-click on the icon for your Router and select Invoke. The web configurator login screen 5 displays.



Figure 126 Network Connections: My Network Places

6 Right-click on the icon for your Router and select **Properties**. A properties window displays with basic information about the Router.

Figure 127 Network Connections: My Network Places: Properties: Example

ZyXEL Internet S	iharing Gateway 🛛 🕅
General	
Ŭ.	ZyXEL Internet Sharing Gateway
Manufacturer:	ZyXEL
Model Name:	ZyXEL Internet Sharing Gateway
Model Number:	Model Number:
Description:	ZyXEL Internet Sharing Gateway
Device Address:	http://192.168.1.1/
	Close Cancel

Maintenance

25.1 Overview

This chapter provides information on the Maintenance screens.

25.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **General** screen to configure system and domain name. You can also set the timeout period of the management session (Section 25.3 on page 179).
- Use the **Password** screen to change your Router's system password (Section 25.4 on page 180).
- Use the Time screen to change your Router's time and date (Section 25.5 on page 181).
- Use the **Firmware Upgrade** screen to upload firmware to your Router (Section 25.6 on page 182).
- Use the **Backup/Restore** screen to view information related to factory defaults, backup configuration, and restoring configuration (Section 25.8 on page 185).
- Use the Reset/Restart screen to reboot the Router without turning the power off (Section 25.8 on page 185).
- Use the **Sys OP Mode** screen to select how you want to use your Router (Section 25.10 on page 187).

25.3 General Screen

Figure 128 Maintenance > General

Use this screen to set the configure system and domain name as well as management session timeout period. Click **Maintenance** > **General**. The following screen displays.

General	
System Setup	
System Name :	NBG-419N v2
Domain Name :	zyxel.com
Administrator Inactivity Timer :	0 (minutes, 0 means no timeout)
	Apply Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Setup	
System Name	System Name is a unique name to identify the Router in an Ethernet network.
Domain Name	Enter the domain name you want to give to the Router.
Administrator Inactivity Timer	Type how many minutes a management session can be left idle before the session times out. The default is 5 minutes. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks. A value of "0" means a management session never times out, no matter how long it has been left idle (not recommended).
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.

 Table 79
 Maintenance > General

25.4 Password Screen

It is strongly recommended that you change your Router's password.

If you forget your Router's password (or IP address), you will need to reset the device. See Section 25.8 on page 185 for details.

Click **Maintenance** > **Password**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 129 Maintenance > Password

Password Setup	
Password Setup	
Old Password :	
New Password :	
Retype to Confirm :	A
	Apply Reset

Table 80 Maintenance > Password	Table 80	Maintenance	>	Password
---------------------------------	----------	-------------	---	----------

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Password Setup	Change your Router's password (recommended) using the fields as shown.
Old Password	Type the default password or the existing password you use to access the system in this field.
New Password	Type your new system password (up to 30 characters). Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Retype to Confirm	Type the new password again in this field.
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.
Reset	Click Reset to begin configuring this screen afresh.

25.5 Time Setting Screen

Use this screen to configure the Router's time based on your local time zone. To change your Router's time and date, click **Maintenance** > **Time**. The screen appears as shown.

Figure 130 Maintenance > Time		
Time Setting		
Current Time and Date		
Current Time :	07:07:54	
Current Date :	2012-01-18	
Current Time and Date		
C Manual		
New Time (hh:mm:ss) :	7 : 7 : 46	
New Date (yyyy/mm/dd) :	2012 / 1 / 18	
• Get from Time Server		
 Auto 		
O User Defined Time Server Address :	192.5.41.41	
Time Zone Setup		
Time Zone :	(GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London 💌	
Daylight Savings		
start Date (mm/dd)	/ at	o'clock
End Date	/ at	o'clock
	Apply Reset	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 81 Maintenance > Time

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current Time and Date	
Current Time	This field displays the time of your Router.
	Each time you reload this page, the Router synchronizes the time with the time server.
Current Date	This field displays the date of your Router.
	Each time you reload this page, the Router synchronizes the date with the time server.
Current Time and Date	
Manual	Select this radio button to enter the time and date manually. If you configure a new time and date, Time Zone and Daylight Saving at the same time, the new time and date you entered has priority and the Time Zone and Daylight Saving settings do not affect it.
New Time	This field displays the last updated time from the time server or the last time configured
(hh:mm:ss)	manually.
	When you select Manual , enter the new time in this field and then click Apply .
New Date	This field displays the last updated date from the time server or the last date configured manually.
(yyyy/mm/dd)	manually.
	When you select Manual, enter the new date in this field and then click Apply.

LABEL	ance > Time (continued) DESCRIPTION	
Get from Time Server	Select this radio button to have the Router get the time and date from the time server you specified below.	
Auto	Select Auto to have the Router automatically search for an available time server and synchronize the date and time with the time server after you click Apply .	
User Defined Time Server Address	Select User Defined Time Server Address and enter the IP address or URL (up to 20 extended ASCII characters in length) of your time server. Check with your ISP/network administrator if you are unsure of this information.	
Time Zone Setup		
Time Zone	Choose the time zone of your location. This will set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).	
Daylight Savings	Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening.	
	Select this option if you use Daylight Saving Time.	
Start Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected Daylight Savings . The o'clock field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:	
	Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the first Sunday of April. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select First , Sunday , April and type 2 in the o'clock field.	
	Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Last , Sunday , March . The time you type in the o'clock field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 2 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).	
End Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected Daylight Savings . The o'clock field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:	
	Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the last Sunday of October. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select Last , Sunday , October and type 2 in the o'clock field.	
	Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select Last , Sunday , October . The time you type in the o'clock field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would type 2 because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).	
Apply	Click Apply to save your changes back to the Router.	
Cancel	Click Cancel to begin configuring this screen afresh.	

Table 81 Maintenance > Time (continued)

25.6 Firmware Upgrade Screen

Find firmware at <u>www.zyxel.com</u> in a file that (usually) uses the system model name with a "*.bin" extension, e.g., "Router.bin". The upload process uses HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and may take up to two minutes. After a successful upload, the system will reboot.

Click **Maintenance** > **Firmware Upgrade**. Follow the instructions in this screen to upload firmware to your Router.



Firmware Upgrade	
Upgrade Firmware	
	e firmware, browse to the location of the binary (.BIN) upgrade file and click Upload. Upgrade files can be the upgrade file is compressed (.ZIP file), you must first extract the binary (.BIN) file. In some cases, you Browse
On-line Firmware Upgrade	
Check for Latest Firm	ware Now
	ware Now

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse to find it.
Browse	Click Browse to find the .bin file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.zip) files before you can upload them.
Upload	Click Upload to begin the upload process. This process may take up to two minutes.
Check for Latest Firmware Now	Click this to check for the latest updated firmware.

 Table 82
 Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade

Note: Do not turn off the Router while firmware upload is in progress!

After you see the **Firmware Upload In Process** screen, wait two minutes before logging into the Router again.

The Router automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

Figure 132 Network Temporarily Disconnected

Loc	al Are	a Con	nection	
twork	cable u	Inplugg	ged	
,	,	-		F
) Local Area Connection

After two minutes, log in again and check your new firmware version in the Status screen.

If the upload was not successful, an error message appears. Click **Return** to go back to the **Firmware Upgrade** screen.

25.7 Configuration Backup/Restore Screen

Backup configuration allows you to back up (save) the Router's current configuration to a file on your computer. Once your Router is configured and functioning properly, it is highly recommended that you back up your configuration file before making configuration changes. The backup configuration file will be useful in case you need to return to your previous settings.

Restore configuration allows you to upload a new or previously saved configuration file from your computer to your Router.

Click **Maintenance** > **Backup/Restore**. Information related to factory defaults, backup configuration, and restoring configuration appears as shown next.

Figure 133 Maintenance > Backup/Restore

ackup Configuration	
Click Backup to save the current configu	ration of your system to your computer. Backup
estore Configuration	
To restore a previously saved configural	tion file to your system, browse to the location of the configuration file and click Upload.
File Path :	Browse Upload
ack to Factory Defaults Click Reset to clear all user-entered conf	figuration information and retur to factory defaults. After resetting, the
- Password will be 1234	
- LAN IP address will be 192.168.1.1 - DHCP will be reset to server	and a second s
	Reset

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Backup	Click Backup to save the Router's current configuration to your computer.
File Path	Type in the location of the file you want to upload in this field or click Browse to find it.
Browse	Click Browse to find the file you want to upload. Remember that you must decompress compressed (.ZIP) files before you can upload them.

 Table 83
 Maintenance > Backup/Restore

 Table 83
 Maintenance > Backup/Restore (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Upload	Click Upload to begin the upload process.
	Note: Do not turn off the Router while configuration file upload is in progress.
	After you see a "configuration upload successful" screen, you must then wait one minute before logging into the Router again. The Router automatically restarts in this time causing a temporary network disconnect.
	If you see an error screen, click Back to return to the Backup/Restore screen.
Reset	Pressing the Reset button in this section clears all user-entered configuration information and returns the Router to its factory defaults.
	You can also press the RESET button on the rear panel to reset the factory defaults of your Router. Refer to the chapter about introducing the Web Configurator for more information on the RESET button.

Note: If you uploaded the default configuration file you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default Router IP address (192.168.1.2). See Appendix C on page 219 for details on how to set up your computer's IP address.

25.8 Reset/Restart Screen

System restart allows you to reboot the Router without turning the power off.

Click Maintenance > Reset/Restart to open the following screen.

Figure 134 Maintenance > Reset/Restart

Restart	
System Restart	
	e the device perform a software restart. The SYS(or PWR) LED blinks as the device restarts and then stays steady on if the ul. Wait a minute before logging into the device again.
	Restart

Click **Restart** to have the Router reboot. This does not affect the Router's configuration.

25.9 System Operation Mode Overview

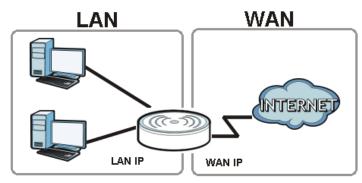
The **Sys OP Mode** (System Operation Mode) function lets you configure your Router as an access point, wireless client or both at the same time. You can choose between **Router**, **Access Point Mode**, and **WISP Mode** depending on your network topology and the features you require from your device.

The following describes the device modes available in your Router.

Router

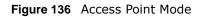
A router connects your local network with another network, such as the Internet. The router has two IP addresses, the LAN IP address and the WAN IP address.

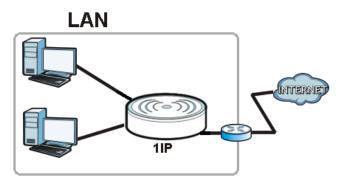
Figure 135 LAN and WAN IP Addresses in Router Mode



Access Point

An access point enabled all ethernet ports to be bridged together and be in the same subnet. To connect to the Internet, another device, such as a router, is required.

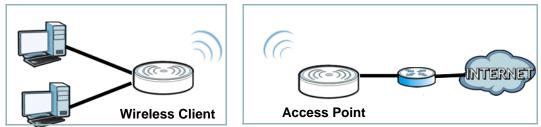




WISP

A WISP client connects to an existing access point wirelessly. It acts just like a wireless client in notebooks/computers.

Figure 137	IP Address	in Access	Point Mode
------------	------------	-----------	------------



25.10 Sys OP Mode Screen

Use this screen to select how you want to use your Router.

Figure 138 Maintenance > Sys OP Mode

Sys OP Mode
Configuration Mode © Router Mode
C Access Point Mode
Note:
Router: In this mode, the device is supported to connect to internet via ADSL/Cable Modem. PCs in LAN ports share the same IP to ISP through WAN Port. Access Point: In this mode, all Ethernet ports are bridged together. The device allows the wireless-equipped computer can communicate with a wired network.
WISP Mode: In this mode, the device acts as a wireless client. It can connect to an existing network via an access point. Also router functions are added between the wireless WAN and the LAN.
Apply Cancel

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Operation	n Mode
Router	Select Router Mode if your device routes traffic between a local network and another network such as the Internet. This mode offers services such as a firewall or bandwidth management.
	You can configure the IP address settings on your WAN port. Contact your ISP or system administrator for more information on appropriate settings.
Access Point	Select Access Point Mode if your device bridges traffic between clients on the same network.
	 In Access Point Mode, all Ethernet ports have the same IP address. All ports on the rear panel of the device are LAN ports, including the port labeled WAN. There is no WAN port. The DHCP server on your device is disabled.
	 The IP address of the device on the local network is set to 192.168.1.2.
WISP Mode	Select WISP Mode if your device needs a wireless client to connect to an existing access point.
	You cannot configure Wireless LAN settings (including WPS) and scheduling in the WISP Mode.
	• The IP address of the device on the local network is the same as the IP address given to the Router while in router mode (default is 192.168.1.1).
Apply	Click Apply to save your settings.
Cancel	Click Cancel to return your settings to the default (Router).

Table 84 Maintenance > Sys OP Mode

Note: If you select the incorrect System Operation Mode you may not be able to connect to the Internet.

Troubleshooting

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter. The potential problems are divided into the following categories.

- Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs
- Router Access and Login
- Internet Access
- Resetting the Router to Its Factory Defaults
- Wireless Router/AP Troubleshooting
- ZyXEL Share Center Utility Problems

26.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs

The Router does not turn on. None of the LEDs turn on.

- 1 Make sure you are using the power adaptor or cord included with the Router.
- 2 Make sure the power adaptor or cord is connected to the Router and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure the power source is turned on.
- 3 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Router.
- 4 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

One of the LEDs does not behave as expected.

- 1 Make sure you understand the normal behavior of the LED. See Section 1.5 on page 17.
- 2 Check the hardware connections. See the Quick Start Guide.
- 3 Inspect your cables for damage. Contact the vendor to replace any damaged cables.
- 4 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor to the Router.
- 5 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

26.2 Router Access and Login

I don't know the IP address of my Router.

- 1 The default IP address is **192.168.1.1**.
- 2 If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, you might get the IP address of the Router by looking up the IP address of the default gateway for your computer. To do this in most Windows computers, click Start > Run, enter cmd, and then enter ipconfig. The IP address of the Default Gateway might be the IP address of the Router (it depends on the network), so enter this IP address in your Internet browser.Set your device to Router Mode, login (see the Quick Start Guide for instructions) and go to the Device Information table in the Status screen. Your Router's IP address is available in the Device Information table.
 - If the **DHCP** setting under **LAN** information is **None**, your device has a fixed IP address.
 - If the **DHCP** setting under **LAN** information is **Client**, then your device receives an IP address from a DHCP server on the network.
- **3** If your Router is a DHCP client, you can find your IP address from the DHCP server. This information is only available from the DHCP server which allocates IP addresses on your network. Find this information directly from the DHCP server or contact your system administrator for more information.
- 4 Reset your Router to change all settings back to their default. This means your current settings are lost. See Section 26.4 on page 193 in the **Troubleshooting** for information on resetting your Router.

I forgot the password.

- 1 The default password is **1234**.
- 2 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See Section 26.4 on page 193.

I cannot see or access the **Login** screen in the Web Configurator.

- 1 Make sure you are using the correct IP address.
 - The default IP address is 192.168.1.1.
 - If you changed the IP address (Section 14.4 on page 133), use the new IP address.
 - If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, see the troubleshooting suggestions for I don't know the IP address of my Router.

- 2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide.
- **3** Make sure your Internet browser does not block pop-up windows and has JavaScript and Java enabled. See Appendix A on page 197.
- 4 Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the Router. (If you know that there are routers between your computer and the Router, skip this step.)
 - If there is a DHCP server on your network, make sure your computer is using a dynamic IP address. See Appendix C on page 219.
 - If there is no DHCP server on your network, make sure your computer's IP address is in the same subnet as the Router. See Appendix C on page 219.
- 5 Reset the device to its factory defaults, and try to access the Router with the default IP address. See Section 4.3 on page 41.
- **6** If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestion

• If your computer is connected to the **WAN** port or is connected wirelessly, use a computer that is connected to a **LAN/ETHERNET** port.

I can see the **Login** screen, but I cannot log in to the Router.

- 1 Make sure you have entered the password correctly. The default password is **1234**. This field is case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 2 This can happen when you fail to log out properly from your last session. Try logging in again after 5 minutes.
- **3** Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Router.
- 4 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See Section 26.4 on page 193.

26.3 Internet Access

I cannot access the Internet.

1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide.

- 2 Make sure you entered your ISP account information correctly in the wizard. These fields are casesensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 3 If you are trying to access the Internet wirelessly, make sure the wireless settings in the wireless client are the same as the settings in the AP.
 - Go to Network > Wireless LAN > General > WDS and check if the Router is set to bridge mode. Select Disable and try to connect to the Internet again.
- 4 Disconnect all the cables from your device, and follow the directions in the Quick Start Guide again.
- **5** Go to **Maintenance > Sys OP Mode**. Check your System Operation Mode setting.
 - Select **Router** if your device routes traffic between a local network and another network such as the Internet.
 - Select Access Point if your device bridges traffic between clients on the same network.
- 6 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.

I cannot access the Internet anymore. I had access to the Internet (with the Router), but my Internet connection is not available anymore.

- 1 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See the Quick Start Guide and Section 1.5 on page 17.
- 2 Reboot the Router.
- 3 If the problem continues, contact your ISP.

The Internet connection is slow or intermittent.

- 1 There might be a lot of traffic on the network. Look at the LEDs, and check Section 1.5 on page 17. If the Router is sending or receiving a lot of information, try closing some programs that use the Internet, especially peer-to-peer applications.
- 2 Check the signal strength. If the signal strength is low, try moving the Router closer to the AP if possible, and look around to see if there are any devices that might be interfering with the wireless network (for example, microwaves, other wireless networks, and so on).
- **3** Reboot the Router.
- 4 If the problem continues, contact the network administrator or vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestions

• Check the settings for bandwidth management. If it is disabled, you might consider activating it. If it is enabled, you might consider changing the allocations.

• Check the settings for QoS. If it is disabled, you might consider activating it. If it is enabled, you might consider raising or lowering the priority for some applications.

26.4 Resetting the Router to Its Factory Defaults

If you reset the Router, you lose all of the changes you have made. The Router re-loads its default settings, and the password resets to **1234**. You have to make all of your changes again.

You will lose all of your changes when you push the **RESET** button.

To reset the Router,

- 1 Make sure the power LED is on.
- 2 Press the **RESET** button for longer than 1 second to restart/reboot the Router.
- **3** Press the **RESET** button for longer than five seconds to set the Router back to its factory-default configurations.

If the Router restarts automatically, wait for the Router to finish restarting, and log in to the Web Configurator. The password is "1234".

If the Router does not restart automatically, disconnect and reconnect the Router's power. Then, follow the directions above again.

26.5 Wireless Router/AP Troubleshooting

I cannot access the Router or ping any computer from the WLAN (wireless AP or router).

- 1 Make sure the wireless LAN is enabled on the Router
- 2 Make sure the wireless adapter on the wireless station is working properly.
- 3 Make sure the wireless adapter installed on your computer is IEEE 802.11 compatible and supports the same wireless standard as the Router.
- 4 Make sure your computer (with a wireless adapter installed) is within the transmission range of the Router.
- **5** Check that both the Router and your wireless station are using the same wireless and wireless security settings.
- 6 Make sure traffic between the WLAN and the LAN is not blocked by the firewall on the Router.

- 7 Make sure you allow the Router to be remotely accessed through the WLAN interface. Check your remote management settings.
 - See the chapter on Wireless LAN in the User's Guide for more information.

I set up URL keyword blocking, but I can still access a website that should be blocked.

Make sure that you select the **Enable URL Keyword Blocking** check box in the Content Filtering screen. Make sure that the keywords that you type are listed in the **Keyword List**.

If a keyword that is listed in the **Keyword List** is not blocked when it is found in a URL, customize the keyword blocking using commands. See the Customizing Keyword Blocking URL Checking section in the Content Filter chapter.

I can access the Web Configurator after I switched to AP mode.

When you change from router mode to AP mode, your computer must have an IP address in the range between "192.168.1.3" and "192.168.1.254".

Refer to Appendix C on page 219 for instructions on how to change your computer's IP address.

26.6 ZyXEL Share Center Utility Problems

I cannot access or see a USB device that is connected to the Router.

- 1 Disconnect the problematic USB device, then reconnect it to the Router.
- 2 Ensure that the USB device in question has power.
- **3** Check your cable connections.
- 4 Restart the Router by disconnecting the power and then reconnecting it.
- **5** If the USB device requires a special driver, install the driver from the installation disc that came with the device. After driver installation, reconnect the USB device to the Router and try to connect to it again with your computer.
- 6 If the problem persists, contact your vendor.

I cannot install the ZyXEL Share Center Utility.

- 1 Make sure that the set up program is one required for your operating system.
- 2 Install the latest patches and updates for your operating system.
- 3 Check the zyxel.com download site for a newer version of the utility.

Two computers cannot connect the USB storage at the same time using the ZyXEL Share Center Utility.

Only one computer can connect to the USB storage through the ZyXEL Share Center Utlity at a time. If two computers (**A** and **B**) want to connect to the USB storage by using the Utility, do the following:

- 1 After A finishes connection to the USB storage, disconnect it by clicking **Disconnect** in A's Utlity.
- 2 Connect B to the USB storage (through the Utility) by clicking Connect in B's Utility.
- **3** If **A** does not disconnect the USB storage, **B** should click **Request to Connect** in the Utility to request **A** to disconnect. **B** cannot access the USB storage until **A** disconnects.
 - See Chapter 11 on page 87 for more details on connecting to USB storage by the Utility.

Pop-up Windows, JavaScript and Java Permissions

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

Note: The screens used below belong to Internet Explorer version 6, 7 and 8. Screens for other Internet Explorer versions may vary.

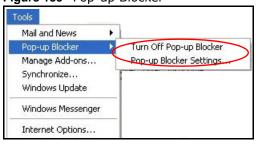
Internet Explorer Pop-up Blockers

You may have to disable pop-up blocking to log into your device.

Either disable pop-up blocking (enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2) or allow pop-up blocking and create an exception for your device's IP address.

Disable Pop-up Blockers

In Internet Explorer, select Tools, Pop-up Blocker and then select Turn Off Pop-up Blocker.
 Figure 139 Pop-up Blocker



You can also check if pop-up blocking is disabled in the **Pop-up Blocker** section in the **Privacy** tab.

1 In Internet Explorer, select Tools, Internet Options, Privacy.

2 Clear the **Block pop-ups** check box in the **Pop-up Blocker** section of the screen. This disables any web pop-up blockers you may have enabled.

Figure 140 Internet Options: Privacy

Internet	Options					? 🛛
General	Security	Privacy	Content	Connections	Programs	Advanced
Settin	50	he slider to	o select a j	privacy setting I	for the Interr	net
-	- Blo priv - Blo - Info - Re	acy policy ocks third-p rmation wit estricts first	oarty cook hout your -party coo	ies that do not ies that use per implicit consent kies that use pe it consent	rsonally iden t	tifiable
Pop-u				Advanced.	ring.	ault
			ОК	Ca	ncel	Apply

3 Click **Apply** to save this setting.

Enable Pop-up Blockers with Exceptions

Alternatively, if you only want to allow pop-up windows from your device, see the following steps.

1 In Internet Explorer, select **Tools**, **Internet Options** and then the **Privacy** tab.

2 Select Settings...to open the Pop-up Blocker Settings screen.

Figure 141 Internet Options: Privacy

Internet	Options					? 🛛
General	Security	Privacy	Content	Connections	Programs	Advanced
Settin	50	he slider to	o select a j	privacy setting I	ior the Interr	net
	- Blo priv - Blo - Info - Re	acy policy ocks third-j rmation wil estricts first	party cook thout your -party coo	ies that do not ies that use per implicit consent kies that use pr cit consent	sonally iden	Itifiable
Pop-u	<u> </u>			Advanced.	ing.	ault
			ОК	Ca	ncel	Apply

3 Type the IP address of your device (the web page that you do not want to have blocked) with the prefix "http://". For example, http://192.168.167.1.

4 Click Add to move the IP address to the list of Allowed sites.

Figure 142 Pop-up Blocker Settings

op-up Blocker Settings	2
Exceptions Pop-ups are currently blocked. You can a Web sites by adding the site to the list belo Address of Web site to allow: http://192.168.1.1	
Allowed sites:	
	Remove
	Remove All
Notifications and Filter Level	
Play a sound when a pop-up is blocked.	
Show Information Bar when a pop-up is blocked Filter Level:	
Medium: Block most automatic pop-ups	×
Pop-up Blocker FAQ	Close

- 5 Click Close to return to the Privacy screen.
- 6 Click **Apply** to save this setting.

JavaScript

If pages of the web configurator do not display properly in Internet Explorer, check that JavaScript are allowed.

1 In Internet Explorer, click **Tools**, **Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.

Figure 143 Internet Options: Security

Internet (Options
General	Security Privacy Content Connections Programs Advanced
Select	a Web content zone to specify its security settings.
6	
Int	ernet Local intranet Trusted sites Restricted sites
	Internet
	This zone contains all Web sites you Sites
_ Secu	rity level for this zone
	Move the slider to set the security level for this zone.
-	- Medium
	 Safe browsing and still functional Prompts before downloading potentially unsafe content
	Unsigned ActiveX controls will not be downloaded
-	Appropriate for most Internet sites
- 1	-
	Custom Level Default Level
	OK Cancel Apply

- 2 Click the **Custom Level**... button.
- 3 Scroll down to Scripting.
- 4 Under Active scripting make sure that Enable is selected (the default).
- 5 Under Scripting of Java applets make sure that Enable is selected (the default).

6 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 144 Security Settings - Java Scripting
Security Settings
Settings:
Scripting Active scripting Disable
Enable Prompt Allow paste operations via script
Disable Enable Prompt
Scripting of Java applets Disable Enable Disable
Prompt Iter Authoritisation
Reset custom settings
Reset to: Medium Reset
OK Cancel

Java Permissions

- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools**, **Internet Options** and then the **Security** tab.
- 2 Click the Custom Level... button.
- 3 Scroll down to Microsoft VM.
- 4 Under Java permissions make sure that a safety level is selected.

5 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 145 Security S	Settings - Java
Security Settings	<u>? ×</u>
Settings:	
 Disable Enable Font download Disable Enable Prompt Microsoft VM Java permissions Custom Disable Java High safety Low safety Medium safet Microsoftable Java 	 ▼
Reset custom settings	▼ Reset
	OK Cancel

JAVA (Sun)

- 1 From Internet Explorer, click **Tools**, **Internet Options** and then the **Advanced** tab.
- 2 Make sure that Use Java 2 for <applet> under Java (Sun) is selected.

3 Click **OK** to close the window.

Figure 146 Java (Sun)

Internet Options
General Security Privacy Content Connections Programs Advanced
Settings:
Use inline AutoComplete Use Passive FTP (for firewall and DSL modem compatibility) Use smooth scrolling HTTP 1.1 settings Use HTTP 1.1 Use HTTP 1.1 Use HTTP 1.1 through proxy connections Java (Sun) Use Java 2 v1.4.1_07 for <applet> (requires restart)</applet>
 Microsoft VM Java console enabled (requires restart) Java logging enabled JIT compiler for virtual machine enabled (requires restart) Multimedia Always show Internet Explorer (5.0 or later) Radio toolbar
Don't display online media content in the media bar Enable Automatic Image Resizing
OK Cancel Apply

Mozilla Firefox

Mozilla Firefox 2.0 screens are used here. Screens for other versions may vary slightly. The steps below apply to Mozilla Firefox 3.0 as well.

You can enable Java, Javascript and pop-ups in one screen. Click **Tools**, then click **Options** in the screen that appears.

Tools	<u>H</u> elp		
Web	<u>S</u> earch	Ctrl+K	
Dow	nloads	Ctrl+J	
<u>A</u> dd-	-ons		
<u>W</u> eb) Developer		×.
Erro	r <u>C</u> onsole		
Adbl	lock Plus	Ctrl+Shift+A	
Page	e <u>I</u> nfo		
🐮 Eire	FTP		
Clea	r <u>P</u> rivate Data	. Ctrl+Shift+Del	
🎒 Tab) Mix Plus Option	IS	
😤 Ses	sion Manager		۲
Opti	ons		

Figure 147 Mozilla Firefox: TOOLS > Options

Click **Content** to show the screen below. Select the check boxes as shown in the following screen.

Figure 148	Mozilla	Firefox	Content	Security

Contract of the second se				
Ì 🦉	۱ 🌑)	5		<u></u>
Main Tal	bs Content	Feeds Privacy	Security	Advanced
Block pop	-up windows			Exceptions
🔽 Load įmag	ges automatically	$\mathbf{)}$		Exceptions
🔽 Enable <u>J</u> a	waScript)		Ad <u>v</u> anced
Enable Ja	iva			
				Colors
File Types				
File Types	v Firefox handles ce	rtain types of file:	;	<u>M</u> anage
	/Firefox handles ce	rtain types of file:	;	<u>M</u> anage
	v Firefox handles ce	rtain types of file:	;	Manage

Opera

Opera 10 screens are used here. Screens for other versions may vary slightly.

Allowing Pop-Ups

From Opera, click **Tools**, then **Preferences**. In the **General** tab, go to **Choose how you prefer to handle pop-ups** and select **Open all pop-ups**.

Figure 149 Opera: Allowing Pop-Ups

Startup	Continue from last time	-
Home page	http://portal.opera.com	Use Current
•	u prefer to handle pop-ups	
Choose how yo Pop-ups	Open all pop-ups	
•	Open all pop-ups	
•	Open all pop-ups	
Pop-ups	Open all pop-ups Open pop-ups Open pop-ups in background Block unwanted pop-ups Block all pop-ups	
Pop-ups	Open all pop-ups Open all pop-ups Open pop-ups in background Block unwanted pop-ups	

Enabling Java

From Opera, click **Tools**, then **Preferences**. In the **Advanced** tab, select **Content** from the leftside menu. Select the check boxes as shown in the following screen.

igule 130 O	pera. Litability Java	
Preferences		x
General Forms Sear	ch Web Pages Advanced	1
Tabs Browsing Notifications Content Fonts Downloads Programs	Image: Enable animated images Image: Enable sound in Web pages Image: Enable JavaScript Image: Enable JavaScript Image: Enable plug-ins	
History Cookies Security Network	Style Options Content settings can be adapted to each site	
Toolbars Shortcuts Voice	Manage Site Preferences Blocked Content	
	OK Cancel Help	

Figure 150 Opera: Enabling Java

To customize JavaScript behavior in the Opera browser, click **JavaScript Options**.

Figure 151 Opera: JavaScript Options



Select the items you want Opera's JavaScript to apply.

IP Addresses and Subnetting

This appendix introduces IP addresses and subnet masks.

IP addresses identify individual devices on a network. Every networking device (including computers, servers, routers, printers, etc.) needs an IP address to communicate across the network. These networking devices are also known as hosts.

Subnet masks determine the maximum number of possible hosts on a network. You can also use subnet masks to divide one network into multiple sub-networks.

Introduction to IP Addresses

One part of the IP address is the network number, and the other part is the host ID. In the same way that houses on a street share a common street name, the hosts on a network share a common network number. Similarly, as each house has its own house number, each host on the network has its own unique identifying number - the host ID. Routers use the network number to send packets to the correct network, while the host ID determines to which host on the network the packets are delivered.

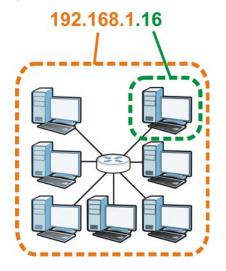
Structure

An IP address is made up of four parts, written in dotted decimal notation (for example, 192.168.1.1). Each of these four parts is known as an octet. An octet is an eight-digit binary number (for example 11000000, which is 192 in decimal notation).

Therefore, each octet has a possible range of 00000000 to 11111111 in binary, or 0 to 255 in decimal.

The following figure shows an example IP address in which the first three octets (192.168.1) are the network number, and the fourth octet (16) is the host ID.

Figure 152 Network Number and Host ID



How much of the IP address is the network number and how much is the host ID varies according to the subnet mask.

Subnet Masks

A subnet mask is used to determine which bits are part of the network number, and which bits are part of the host ID (using a logical AND operation). The term "subnet" is short for "sub-network".

A subnet mask has 32 bits. If a bit in the subnet mask is a "1" then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the network number. If a bit in the subnet mask is "0" then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the host ID.

The following example shows a subnet mask identifying the network number (in bold text) and host ID of an IP address (192.168.1.2 in decimal).

	1ST OCTET:	2ND OCTET:	3RD OCTET:	4TH OCTET
	(192)	(168)	(1)	(2)
IP Address (Binary)	11000000	10101000	0000001	0000010
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111	11111111	11111111	0000000
Network Number	11000000	10101000	00000001	
Host ID				0000010

Table 85	IP Address Networ	k Number and Host ID Example

By convention, subnet masks always consist of a continuous sequence of ones beginning from the leftmost bit of the mask, followed by a continuous sequence of zeros, for a total number of 32 bits.

Subnet masks can be referred to by the size of the network number part (the bits with a "1" value). For example, an "8-bit mask" means that the first 8 bits of the mask are ones and the remaining 24 bits are zeroes.

Subnet masks are expressed in dotted decimal notation just like IP addresses. The following examples show the binary and decimal notation for 8-bit, 16-bit, 24-bit and 29-bit subnet masks.

	BINARY				
	1ST OCTET	2ND OCTET	3RD OCTET	4TH OCTET	DECIMAL
8-bit mask	11111111	00000000	0000000	0000000	255.0.0.0
16-bit mask	11111111	11111111	00000000	00000000	255.255.0.0
24-bit mask	11111111	11111111	11111111	00000000	255.255.255.0
29-bit mask	11111111	11111111	11111111	11111000	255.255.255.248

Table 86 Subnet Masks

Network Size

The size of the network number determines the maximum number of possible hosts you can have on your network. The larger the number of network number bits, the smaller the number of remaining host ID bits.

An IP address with host IDs of all zeros is the IP address of the network (192.168.1.0 with a 24-bit subnet mask, for example). An IP address with host IDs of all ones is the broadcast address for that network (192.168.1.255 with a 24-bit subnet mask, for example).

As these two IP addresses cannot be used for individual hosts, calculate the maximum number of possible hosts in a network as follows:

SUBNET	T MASK	HOST ID SIZE		MAXIMUM NUMBER OF HOSTS
8 bits	255.0.0.0	24 bits	2 ²⁴ – 2	16777214
16 bits	255.255.0.0	16 bits	2 ¹⁶ – 2	65534
24 bits	255.255.255.0	8 bits	2 ⁸ – 2	254
29 bits	255.255.255.248	3 bits	2 ³ – 2	6

 Table 87
 Maximum Host Numbers

Notation

Since the mask is always a continuous number of ones beginning from the left, followed by a continuous number of zeros for the remainder of the 32 bit mask, you can simply specify the number of ones instead of writing the value of each octet. This is usually specified by writing a "/" followed by the number of bits in the mask after the address.

For example, 192.1.1.0 /25 is equivalent to saying 192.1.1.0 with subnet mask 255.255.255.128.

The following table shows some possible subnet masks using both notations.

SUBNET MASK	ALTERNATIVE NOTATION	LAST OCTET (BINARY)	LAST OCTET (DECIMAL)
255.255.255.0	/24	0000 0000	0
255.255.255.128	/25	1000 0000	128
255.255.255.192	/26	1100 0000	192

 Table 88
 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation

SUBNET MASK	ALTERNATIVE NOTATION	LAST OCTET (BINARY)	LAST OCTET (DECIMAL)
255.255.255.224	/27	1110 0000	224
255.255.255.240	/28	1111 0000	240
255.255.255.248	/29	1111 1000	248
255.255.255.252	/30	1111 1100	252

 Table 88
 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation (continued)

Subnetting

You can use subnetting to divide one network into multiple sub-networks. In the following example a network administrator creates two sub-networks to isolate a group of servers from the rest of the company network for security reasons.

In this example, the company network address is 192.168.1.0. The first three octets of the address (192.168.1) are the network number, and the remaining octet is the host ID, allowing a maximum of 2^8 – 2 or 254 possible hosts.

The following figure shows the company network before subnetting.

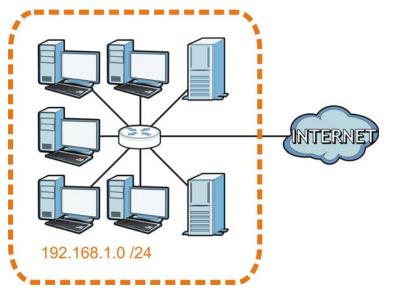


Figure 153 Subnetting Example: Before Subnetting

You can "borrow" one of the host ID bits to divide the network 192.168.1.0 into two separate subnetworks. The subnet mask is now 25 bits (255.255.255.128 or /25).

The "borrowed" host ID bit can have a value of either 0 or 1, allowing two subnets; 192.168.1.0 /25 and 192.168.1.128 /25.

The following figure shows the company network after subnetting. There are now two subnetworks, **A** and **B**.

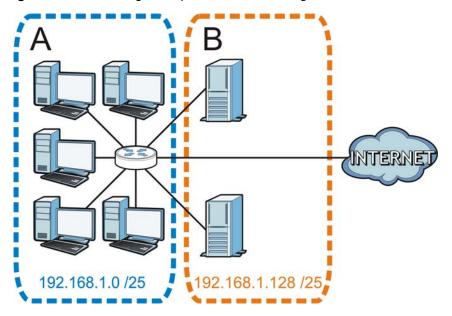


Figure 154 Subnetting Example: After Subnetting

In a 25-bit subnet the host ID has 7 bits, so each sub-network has a maximum of $2^7 - 2$ or 126 possible hosts (a host ID of all zeroes is the subnet's address itself, all ones is the subnet's broadcast address).

192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 is subnet **A** itself, and 192.168.1.127 with mask 255.255.255.128 is its broadcast address. Therefore, the lowest IP address that can be assigned to an actual host for subnet **A** is 192.168.1.1 and the highest is 192.168.1.126.

Similarly, the host ID range for subnet **B** is 192.168.1.129 to 192.168.1.254.

Example: Four Subnets

Each subnet contains 6 host ID bits, giving 2^6 - 2 or 62 hosts for each subnet (a host ID of all zeroes is the subnet itself, all ones is the subnet's broadcast address).

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address (Decimal)	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00 00000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000

Table 89 Subnet 1

Table 89Subnet 1 (continued)

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.63	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.62	

Table 90 Subnet 2

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	64
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	01 000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.64	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.65	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126	

Table 91 Subnet 3

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	128
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	10 000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.191	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.190	

Table 92 Subnet 4

IP/SUBNET MASK	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	192
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	11000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.192	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.193	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254	

Example: Eight Subnets

Similarly, use a 27-bit mask to create eight subnets (000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110 and 111).

The following table shows IP address last octet values for each subnet.

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
1	0	1	30	31
2	32	33	62	63
3	64	65	94	95
4	96	97	126	127
5	128	129	158	159
6	160	161	190	191
7	192	193	222	223
8	224	225	254	255

Table 93	Fight	Subnets
Table 35	LIGHT	Jubricis

Subnet Planning

The following table is a summary for subnet planning on a network with a 24-bit network number.

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.255.128 (/25)	2	126
2	255.255.255.192 (/26)	4	62
3	255.255.255.224 (/27)	8	30
4	255.255.255.240 (/28)	16	14
5	255.255.255.248 (/29)	32	6
6	255.255.255.252 (/30)	64	2
7	255.255.255.254 (/31)	128	1

 Table 94
 24-bit Network Number Subnet Planning

The following table is a summary for subnet planning on a network with a 16-bit network number.

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.128.0 (/17)	2	32766
2	255.255.192.0 (/18)	4	16382
3	255.255.224.0 (/19)	8	8190
4	255.255.240.0 (/20)	16	4094
5	255.255.248.0 (/21)	32	2046
6	255.255.252.0 (/22)	64	1022
7	255.255.254.0 (/23)	128	510
8	255.255.255.0 (/24)	256	254
9	255.255.255.128 (/25)	512	126
10	255.255.255.192 (/26)	1024	62
11	255.255.255.224 (/27)	2048	30
12	255.255.255.240 (/28)	4096	14

 Table 95
 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning

NO. "BORROWED" HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
13	255.255.255.248 (/29)	8192	6
14	255.255.255.252 (/30)	16384	2
15	255.255.255.254 (/31)	32768	1

Table 95 16-bit Network Number Subnet Planning (continued)

Configuring IP Addresses

Where you obtain your network number depends on your particular situation. If the ISP or your network administrator assigns you a block of registered IP addresses, follow their instructions in selecting the IP addresses and the subnet mask.

If the ISP did not explicitly give you an IP network number, then most likely you have a single user account and the ISP will assign you a dynamic IP address when the connection is established. If this is the case, it is recommended that you select a network number from 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.0. The Internet Assigned Number Authority (IANA) reserved this block of addresses specifically for private use; please do not use any other number unless you are told otherwise. You must also enable Network Address Translation (NAT) on the Router.

Once you have decided on the network number, pick an IP address for your Router that is easy to remember (for instance, 192.168.1.1) but make sure that no other device on your network is using that IP address.

The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your Router will compute the subnet mask automatically based on the IP address that you entered. You don't need to change the subnet mask computed by the Router unless you are instructed to do otherwise.

Private IP Addresses

Every machine on the Internet must have a unique address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet (running only between two branch offices, for example) you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems. However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks:

- 10.0.0.0 10.255.255.255
- 172.16.0.0 172.31.255.255
- 192.168.0.0 192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP, or it can be assigned from a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.

Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above. For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, Address Allocation for Private Internets and RFC 1466, Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space.

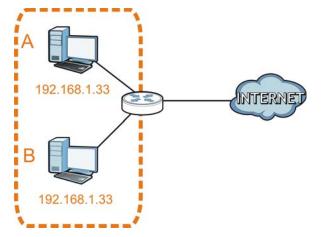
IP Address Conflicts

Each device on a network must have a unique IP address. Devices with duplicate IP addresses on the same network will not be able to access the Internet or other resources. The devices may also be unreachable through the network.

Conflicting Computer IP Addresses Example

More than one device can not use the same IP address. In the following example computer **A** has a static (or fixed) IP address that is the same as the IP address that a DHCP server assigns to computer **B** which is a DHCP client. Neither can access the Internet. This problem can be solved by assigning a different static IP address to computer **A** or setting computer **A** to obtain an IP address automatically.





Conflicting Router IP Addresses Example

Since a router connects different networks, it must have interfaces using different network numbers. For example, if a router is set between a LAN and the Internet (WAN), the router's LAN and WAN addresses must be on different subnets. In the following example, the LAN and WAN are on the same subnet. The LAN computers cannot access the Internet because the router cannot route between networks.

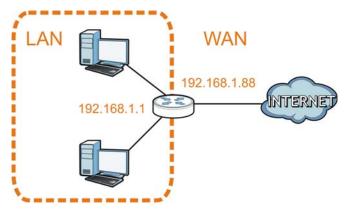
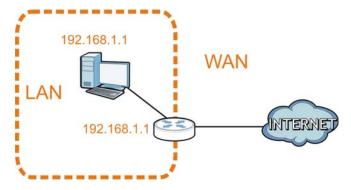


Figure 156 Conflicting Router IP Addresses Example

Conflicting Computer and Router IP Addresses Example

More than one device can not use the same IP address. In the following example, the computer and the router's LAN port both use 192.168.1.1 as the IP address. The computer cannot access the Internet. This problem can be solved by assigning a different IP address to the computer or the router's LAN port.

Figure 157 Conflicting Computer and Router IP Addresses Example



Setting Up Your Computer's IP Address

Note: Your specific Router may not support all of the operating systems described in this appendix. See the product specifications for more information about which operating systems are supported.

This appendix shows you how to configure the IP settings on your computer in order for it to be able to communicate with the other devices on your network. Windows Vista/XP/2000, Mac OS 9/ OS X, and all versions of UNIX/LINUX include the software components you need to use TCP/IP on your computer.

If you manually assign IP information instead of using a dynamic IP, make sure that your network's computers have IP addresses that place them in the same subnet.

In this appendix, you can set up an IP address for:

- Windows XP/NT/2000 on page 220
- Windows Vista on page 223
- Windows 7 on page 227
- Mac OS X: 10.3 and 10.4 on page 231
- Mac OS X: 10.5 and 10.6 on page 234
- Linux: Ubuntu 8 (GNOME) on page 237
- Linux: openSUSE 10.3 (KDE) on page 241

Windows XP/NT/2000

The following example uses the default Windows XP display theme but can also apply to Windows 2000 and Windows NT.

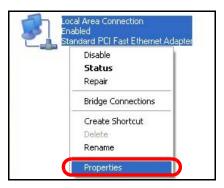
1 Click Start > Control Panel.



2 In the Control Panel, click the Network Connections icon.



3 Right-click Local Area Connection and then select Properties.



4 On the General tab, select Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) and then click Properties.

- Local	Area Connection Properties	?
General	Authentication Advanced	
Connec	t using:	
BB A	ccton EN1207D-TX PCI Fast Ethernet Adapter	
This co	Configure.	
	Client for Microsoft Networks File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks OoS Peaket Scheduler Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)	
<u> </u>	nstall Uninstall Properties	
wide	aption smission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The default area network protocol that provides communication ss diverse interconnected networks.	
Sho	w icon in notification area when connected	
	OK Car	ncel

5 The Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties window opens.

Internet P	rotocol (TCP/IP) Pro	perties 🛛 ? 🔀
General 🛆	Iternate Configuration	
this capab		utomatically if your network supports to ask your network administrator for
💿 Obta	in an IP address automati	cally
Use	the following IP address:	
IP addr	ess:	
Subnet	mask:	
Default	gateway:	
📀 Obta	in DNS server address au	itomatically
Use	the following DNS server	addresses:
Preferre	ed DNS server:	
Alterna	te DNS server:	
		Advanced
		OK Cancel

6 Select Obtain an IP address automatically if your network administrator or ISP assigns your IP address dynamically.

Select **Use the following IP Address** and fill in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Default gateway** fields if you have a static IP address that was assigned to you by your network administrator or ISP. You may also have to enter a **Preferred DNS server** and an **Alternate DNS server**, if that information was provided.

- 7 Click OK to close the Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties window.
- 8 Click OK to close the Local Area Connection Properties window.

Verifying Settings

- 1 Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt.
- 2 In the Command Prompt window, type "ipconfig" and then press [ENTER].

You can also go to **Start > Control Panel > Network Connections**, right-click a network connection, click **Status** and then click the **Support** tab to view your IP address and connection information.

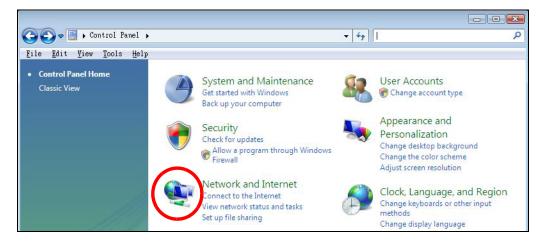
Windows Vista

This section shows screens from Windows Vista Professional.

1 Click Start > Control Panel.



2 In the Control Panel, click the Network and Internet icon.



3 Click the Network and Sharing Center icon.



4 Click Manage network connections.



5 Right-click Local Area Connection and then select Properties.

LAN or High-Spee	d Internet (1)	
Local	Collapse group	Left Arrow
Netwo Intel	Expand all groups	
	Collapse all groups	
	Disable	
	Status	
	Diagnose	-
	Bridge Connections	
	Create Shortcut	
	Delete	
	Rename	-
	Properties	

Note: During this procedure, click **Continue** whenever Windows displays a screen saying that it needs your permission to continue.

6 Select Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) and then select Properties.

This connection uses the following items: Client for Microsoft Networks Network Monitor3 Driver File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks Internet Protocol Version & (TCP/IPv4) Link-Layer Topology Discovery Mapper I/O Driver	
Cor This connection uses the following items: Client for Microsoft Networks Client for Microsoft Networks File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks Internet Protocol Version & (TCP/IPv6) Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Link-Layer Topology Discovery Mapper I/O Dri	
This connection uses the following items: Image: Client for Microsoft Networks Image: Client for Micr	
 Network Monitor3 Driver File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6) Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Link-Layer Topology Discovery Mapper I/O Driver 	
 Network Monitor3 Driver File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6) Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Link-Layer Topology Discovery Mapper I/O Driver 	
File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6) Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)	
Internet Protocol Version & (TCP/IPv6) Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)	
🗹 🔺 Link-Layer Topology Discovery Mapper I/O Dri	
🗹 🔺 Link-Layer Topology Discovery Mapper I/O Dri	
	iver
🗹 🔺 Link-Layer Topology Discovery Responder	
Install Uninstall Pro	perties
Description	
Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The	default
wide area network protocol that provides communica	tion
across diverse interconnected networks.	
ОК	Cano

7 The Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties window opens.

Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP General Alternate Configuration	/IPv4) Pro	perti	es	? 💌
You can get IP settings assigned aut this capability. Otherwise, you need for the appropriate IP settings.				
Obtain an IP address automatic	ally			
OUse the following IP address: —				Ť
IP address:		÷.	i.	
Sybnet mask:	1	12	17	
Default gateway:	1		1	
) Obtain DNS server address aut	omatically			
OUSE the following DNS server a	ddresses:			
Preferred DNS server:		3		
Alternate DNS server;	13	3	i.	
			Adva	anced
		OK		Cancel

8 Select **Obtain an IP address automatically** if your network administrator or ISP assigns your IP address dynamically.

Select Use the following IP Address and fill in the IP address, Subnet mask, and Default gateway fields if you have a static IP address that was assigned to you by your network administrator or ISP. You may also have to enter a Preferred DNS server and an Alternate DNS server, if that information was provided.Click Advanced.

- 9 Click OK to close the Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties window.
- 10 Click OK to close the Local Area Connection Properties window.

Verifying Settings

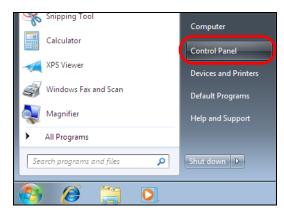
- 1 Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt.
- 2 In the **Command Prompt** window, type "ipconfig" and then press [ENTER].

You can also go to **Start > Control Panel > Network Connections**, right-click a network connection, click **Status** and then click the **Support** tab to view your IP address and connection information.

Windows 7

This section shows screens from Windows 7 Enterprise.

1 Click Start > Control Panel.



2 In the **Control Panel**, click **View network status and tasks** under the **Network and Internet** category.

🥶 ► Control Panel ►	✓ 4y Search Control Panel
Adjust your computer's settings	View by: Category 🕶
System and Security	User Accounts and Family Safety
Review your computer's status	Add or remove user accounts
Back up your computer	Set up parental controls for any user
Find and fix problems	Appearance and Personalization
Network and Internet	Change the theme
View network status and tasks	Change desktop background
Choose homegroup and sharing options	Adjust screen resolution
Hardware and Sound	Clock, Language, and Region
View devices and printers	Change keyboards or other input methods
Add a device	Change display language
Programs Uninstall a program	Ease of Access Let Windows suggest settings Optimize visual display

3 Click Change adapter settings.

😋 💽 🗢 🔛 🕨 Control Panel 🕨	Network and Internet Network and	d Sharing Center		✓ Search
Control Panel Home	View your basic network in	nformation and set (up connections	
Manage wireless networks	🖌 🛝 ——	— 📭 –	🎱	See full map
Change adapter settings Change advanced sharing	TW-PC (This computer)	ZyXEL.com	Internet	
settings	View your active networks		Co	onnect or disconnect
	ZyXEL.com Work network		Access type: Internet Connections: 🚇 Local Area C	onnection

4 Double click Local Area Connection and then select Properties.

🚱 🔍 🛡 😰 🕨 Control Panel 🕨 N	letwork and Internet 🕨 l	Network Conne	ctions 🕨
Organize 🔻 Disable this network	device Diagnose th	is connection	Rename this
Local Area Connection Unidentified network Broadcom NetXtreme Giga	ZyX	eless Network C EL_RT3062_AP1 .11n Wireless US	4
Local Area Connection Status			
Connection			
IPv4 Connectivity:	No network access		
IPv6 Connectivity:	No network access		
Media State:	Enabled		
Duration:	00:04:36		
Speed:	100.0 Mbps	5	
Details			
Activity			
Sent —	Received		
Packets: 432	0		
Properties	Diagnose		
	Clos	e	

Note: During this procedure, click **Continue** whenever Windows displays a screen saying that it needs your permission to continue.

5 Select Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) and then select Properties.

🕌 Local Area Connection Properties
Networking Sharing
Connect using:
Broadcom NetXtreme Gigabit Ethemet
<u>Configure</u> This connection uses the following items:
 Client for Microsoft Networks QoS Packet Scheduler File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6) Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)
Install Uninstall Properties
Description Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The default wide area network protocol that provides communication across diverse interconnected networks.
OK Cancel

6 The Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties window opens.

Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)	Properties ?
General	
You can get IP settings assigned auton this capability. Otherwise, you need to for the appropriate IP settings.	
Obtain an IP address automatical	ly
Use the following IP address:	
IP address:	192.168.1.7
S <u>u</u> bnet mask:	255 . 255 . 255 . 0
Default gateway:	· · ·
Obtain DNS server address auton	natically
• Use the following DNS server add	resses:
Preferred DNS server:	
<u>A</u> lternate DNS server:	· · ·
🔲 Validate settings upon exit	Ad <u>v</u> anced
	OK Cancel

7 Select **Obtain an IP address automatically** if your network administrator or ISP assigns your IP address dynamically.

Select Use the following IP Address and fill in the IP address, Subnet mask, and Default gateway fields if you have a static IP address that was assigned to you by your network administrator or ISP. You may also have to enter a Preferred DNS server and an Alternate DNS server, if that information was provided. Click Advanced if you want to configure advanced settings for IP, DNS and WINS.

- 8 Click OK to close the Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties window.
- 9 Click OK to close the Local Area Connection Properties window.

Verifying Settings

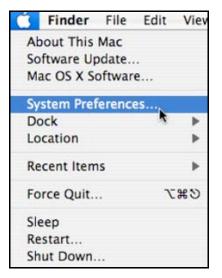
- 1 Click Start > All Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt.
- 2 In the **Command Prompt** window, type "ipconfig" and then press [ENTER].
- 3 The IP settings are displayed as follows.

C:\WINNT\system32\cmd.exe	×
C:\>ipconfig	_
Vindows 2000 IP Configuration	
Ethernet adapter Local Area Connection:	
Connection-specific DNS Suffix . : P-2612HNU-F3v2 IP Address 192.168.1.7	
Subnet Mask 255.255.255.0 Default Gateway 192.168.1.1	
2:\>	•

Mac OS X: 10.3 and 10.4

The screens in this section are from Mac OS X 10.4 but can also apply to 10.3.

1 Click Apple > System Preferences.



2 In the System Preferences window, click the Network icon.

00		Sys	stem Prefer	ences	100	
< > <	Show All				Q	
Personal						
e New				3	Ó	
Appearance	Dashboard & Exposé	Desktop & Screen Saver	Dock	International	Security	Spotlight
Hardware						
8	6			9	=	۵
Bluetooth	CDs & DVDs	Displays	Energy Saver	Keyboard & Mouse	Print & Fax	Sound
Internet &	Network					
		Ø	1			
.Mac	Network	QuickTime	Sharing			
System						
11		()	0	2		
Accounts	Date & Time	Software Update	Speech	Startup Disk	Universal Access	

3 When the **Network** preferences pane opens, select **Built-in Ethernet** from the network connection type list, and then click **Configure**.

	Location:	Automatic
	Show:	Network Status
Θ		Built-in Ethernet is currently active and has the IP address 10.0.1.2. You are connected to the Internet via Built-in Ethernet.
•		internet Sharing is on and is using AirPort to share the connection.
		onfigure)

4 For dynamically assigned settings, select **Using DHCP** from the **Configure IPv4** list in the **TCP/IP** tab.

L	ocation: Autom	atic	•	
	Show: Built-i	n Ethernet	;	
TCP	IP PPPoE A	ppleTalk Proxies	Ethernet	
Configure IPv4:	Using DHCP	>	\$	
IP Address:	0.0.0.0		Renew DH	ICP Lease
Subnet Mask:		DHCP Client	t ID:	
Router:			(If required	d)
				_
DNS Servers:				
Search Domains:				(Optiona
IPv6 Address:				
in to Address.	(_		
	Configure IPv6)		(

- **5** For statically assigned settings, do the following:
 - From the **Configure IPv4** list, select **Manually**.
 - In the **IP Address** field, type your IP address.
 - In the Subnet Mask field, type your subnet mask.
 - In the **Router** field, type the IP address of your device.

L.	ocation: Automatic	•	
	Show: Built-in Ethernet	•	
TCP	IP PPPoE AppleTalk P	roxies Ethernet	
Configure IPv4:	Manually		
		•	
IP Address:	0.0.0.0		
Subnet Mask:	0.0.0.0		
Router:	0.0.0.0		
DNS Servers:			
Search Domains:			(Optiona
IPv6 Address:			
	Configure IPv6		(

6 Click Apply Now and close the window.

Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties by clicking **Applications > Utilities > Network Utilities**, and then selecting the appropriate **Network Interface** from the **Info** tab.

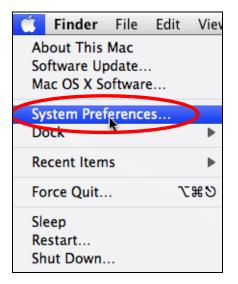
Figure 158	Mac OS X	10.4:	Network	Utility
------------	----------	-------	---------	---------

-								
Info	Netstat	AppleTalk	Ping	Lookup	Traceroute	Whois	Finger	Port Scar
lease	select a po	twork interfa	ce for in	formation				
				ormation				
Netwo	ork Interfa	ce (en0)						
Inter	race info	in the second			Transfer	Statistics		
Har	dware Ad	dress 00:16:0	b:8b:50	:2e	Sent Pack	ets 2060	7	
	IP Addres	ss(es) 118.16	9.44.20	3	Send Err	ors 0		
	Link S	peed 100 Mb	,		Recv Pack	ets 2262	6	
	Link S	tatus Active			Recv Err	ors 0		
	Ve	endor Marvell			Collisio	ons 0		
	N	Nodel Yukon 88E805		Adapter				

Mac OS X: 10.5 and 10.6

The screens in this section are from Mac OS X 10.5 but can also apply to 10.6.

1 Click Apple > System Preferences.



00			System F	references		G	
	Show All					Q	
Personal							
New One	2			0	Î	Q	
Appearance	Desktop & Screen Saver	Dock	Exposé & Spaces	International	Security	Spotlight	
Hardware							
(5		0		
CDs & DVDs	Displays	Energy Saver	Keyboard & Mouse	Print & Fax	Sound		
Internet &	Network						
		Ø					
.Mac	Network	QuickTime	Sharing				
System							
11		The last	(0)	8	2	0	\bigcirc
Accounts	Date & Time	Parental Controls	Software Update	Speech	Startup Disk	Time Machine	Universal Access

2 In System Preferences, click the Network icon.

3 When the **Network** preferences pane opens, select **Ethernet** from the list of available connection types.

	Locati	ion: Automatic		\$	
Internal Modem Not Connected PPPoE Not Connected	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	Status:	Not Connected The cable for Etherne your computer does r	t is connected, but 1ot have an IP address.	
Ethernet Not Connected	<···>	Configure:	Using DHCP	:	
FireWire Not Connected	¥				
AirPort Off	1				
		DNS Server:			
		Search Domains:			
		802.1X:	WPA: ZyXEL04	Connect	
				Advanced	6

4 From the **Configure** list, select **Using DHCP** for dynamically assigned settings.

- **5** For statically assigned settings, do the following:
 - From the **Configure** list, select **Manually**.
 - In the **IP Address** field, enter your IP address.
 - In the **Subnet Mask** field, enter your subnet mask.
 - In the **Router** field, enter the IP address of your Router.

	19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 - 19 -	<u></u>		2
	Location:	Automatic		
Internal Modem Not Connected PPPoE Not Connected	€.** 	Status:	Not Connected The cable for Ethernet i your computer does no	
Ethernet Not Connected	~~>	Configure:	Manually	\$
FireWire Not Connected AirPort Off		IP Address: Subnet Mask: Router: DNS Server: Search Domains: 802.1X:	0.0.0.0	Connect
				Advanced

6 Click **Apply** and close the window.

Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties by clicking **Applications** > **Utilities** > **Network Utilities**, and then selecting the appropriate **Network interface** from the **Info** tab.

Figure 159 Mac OS X 10.5: Network Utility

Ne Ne	etwork Utility
	ookup Traceroute Whois Finger Port Scan
lease select a network interface for inform Network Interface (en1)	
Interface information	Transfer Statistics
Hardware Address: 00:30:65:25:6a:b3	Sent Packets: 1230
IP Address(es): 10.0.2.2	Send Errors: 0
Link Speed: 11 Mbit/s	Recv Packets: 1197
Link Status: Active	Recv Errors: 0
Vendor: Apple	Collisions: 0
Model: Wireless Network	Adapter

Linux: Ubuntu 8 (GNOME)

This section shows you how to configure your computer's TCP/IP settings in the GNU Object Model Environment (GNOME) using the Ubuntu 8 Linux distribution. The procedure, screens and file locations may vary depending on your specific distribution, release version, and individual configuration. The following screens use the default Ubuntu 8 installation.

Note: Make sure you are logged in as the root administrator.

Follow the steps below to configure your computer IP address in GNOME:

1 Click System > Administration > Network.



2 When the **Network Settings** window opens, click **Unlock** to open the **Authenticate** window. (By default, the **Unlock** button is greyed out until clicked.) You cannot make changes to your configuration unless you first enter your admin password.

Network Settings	×
Location:	
Connections General DNS Hosts	
Wired connection Roaming mode enabled	P roperties
Point to point connec This network interface is not c	
	lock

3 In the **Authenticate** window, enter your admin account name and password then click the **Authenticate** button.

9	Authenticate 🛛 🗙
R	System policy prevents modifying the configuration
	An application is attempting to perform an action that requires privileges. Authentication as one of the users below is required to perform this action.
	🕒 C.J.,,,, (chris) 😫
	Password for chris:
⊳ <u>D</u> eta	ils
	O ancel <u>Authenticate</u>

4 In the **Network Settings** window, select the connection that you want to configure, then click **Properties**.

5	Network Settings	×
Location:	\$	
Connections	General DNS Hosts	
	Wired connection Roaming mode enabled	<u>Properties</u>
	Point to point connec This network interface is not c	
Pelp		llock

5 The **Properties** dialog box opens.

1	eth0 Properties	×
Enable roaming mo		
Connection Setting	IS	
Con <u>fi</u> guration:		\$
<u>I</u> P address:		
<u>S</u> ubnet mask:		
<u>G</u> ateway address:		
	Cancel	K

- In the **Configuration** list, select **Automatic Configuration (DHCP)** if you have a dynamic IP address.
- In the **Configuration** list, select **Static IP address** if you have a static IP address. Fill in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Gateway address** fields.
- 6 Click OK to save the changes and close the **Properties** dialog box and return to the **Network Settings** screen.

7 If you know your DNS server IP address(es), click the **DNS** tab in the **Network Settings** window and then enter the DNS server information in the fields provided.

Network Settings	×
Location:	
Connections General DNS Hosts	
DNS Servers	
10.0.2.3	<u>A</u> dd
Search Domains	
	<u> Add</u> <u> </u>
	k Close

8 Click the **Close** button to apply the changes.

Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties by clicking **System > Administration > Network Tools**, and then selecting the appropriate **Network device** from the **Devices** tab. The **Interface Statistics** column shows data if your connection is working properly.

Figure 160 Ubuntu 8: Network Tools

Tool Edit Help Devices Ping Netstat Traceroute Port Scan Lookup Finger Whois Network device: Ethernet Interface (eth0) Image: Confine temperature IP Information Protocol IP Address Netmask / Prefix Broadcast Scope IPv4 10.0.2.15 255.255.255.0 10.0.2.255 IPv6 fe80::a00:27ff:fe30:e16c 64 Link	
Network device: Ethernet Interface (eth0) Image: Confinence (eth0) IP Information Protocol IP Address Netmask / Prefix Broadcast Scope IPv4 10.0.2.15 255.255.255.0 10.0.2.255	
IP Information Protocol IP Address Netmask / Prefix Broadcast Scope IPv4 10.0.2.15 255.255.255.0 10.0.2.255	
IPv4 10.0.2.15 255.255.0 10.0.2.255	gure
IPv6 fe80::a00:27ff:fe30:e16c 64 Link	
Interface Information Interface Statistics	
Hardware address: 08:00:27:30:e1:6c Tr ansmitted byte s: 684.6 KiB Multicast: Enabled Transmitted packets: 1425	
Multicast: Enabled fransmitted packets: 1425 MTU: 1500 Transmission errors: 0	
Link speed: not available Received bytes: 219.5 KiB	
State: Active Received packets: 1426	
Reception errors: 0	
Collisions: 0	

Linux: openSUSE 10.3 (KDE)

This section shows you how to configure your computer's TCP/IP settings in the K Desktop Environment (KDE) using the openSUSE 10.3 Linux distribution. The procedure, screens and file locations may vary depending on your specific distribution, release version, and individual configuration. The following screens use the default openSUSE 10.3 installation.

Note: Make sure you are logged in as the root administrator.

Follow the steps below to configure your computer IP address in the KDE:

1 Click K Menu > Computer > Administrator Settings (YaST).



2 When the Run as Root - KDE su dialog opens, enter the admin password and click OK.

💥 Run as root - KDE su 🎱 🛛 🤉 🔳 🎽		
R	Please enter the Administrator (root) password to continue.	
Command:	/sbin/yast2	
Password:	••••	
	Ignore 🔽 <u>O</u> K 🗶 <u>C</u> ancel	

3 When the YaST Control Center window opens, select Network Devices and then click the Network Card icon.

🥘 YaST Control Center @ lir	iux-h2oz 🅘		×
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>H</u> elp			
Software	DSL		
Hardware			
System	C Modem	Network Card	
Network Devices			
Network Services			
1 Novell AppArmor			
Security and Users			
X Miscellaneous			
<u>S</u> earch	L		_
			/

4 When the **Network Settings** window opens, click the **Overview** tab, select the appropriate connection **Name** from the list, and then click the **Configure** button.

🖪 YaST2@linux-h2oz 🎱		
Network Card Overview	Network Settings	
Obtain an overview of installed network cards. Additionally, edit their	Global Options Overview Hostname/DNS Routing]
configuration. Adding a Network Card: Press Add to configure a new network card manually. Configuring or Deleting: Choose a network card to change or remove. Then press Configure or Delete as desired.	AMD PCnet - Fast 79C971 DHCP	
	AMD PCnet - Fast 79C971 MAC : 08:00:27:96:ed:3d • Device Name: eth-eth0 • Started automatically at boot • IP address assigned using DHCP Add Configure Pelete	
	Back	<u> </u>

5 When the Network Card Setup window opens, click the Address tab

Figure 161 openSUSE 10.3: Network Card Setup

Address Setup 🔺	Network Ca	rd Setup		
Select No Address Setup if you do not want any IP address for this device. This is particularly useful for bonding ethernet devices.		Hardware onfiguration Name etho r Bonding Devices)		
Select Dynamic address if you do not have a static IP address assigned by the system administrator or your cable or DSL provider.	Dynamic Address Statically assigned IP Address Address Additional Addresse	d IP Address Subnet Mask	Hostname	
You can choose one of the dynamic address assignment method. Select DHCP if you have a DHCP server running on your local network. Network addresses are then obtained automatically from the server.	Alias Name IP	Address Netmask		
To automatically search for free IP and then assign it statically, select		Ad <u>d</u> Edit: C	ejete.	2

6 Select **Dynamic Address (DHCP)** if you have a dynamic IP address.

Select **Statically assigned IP Address** if you have a static IP address. Fill in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Hostname** fields.

7 Click Next to save the changes and close the Network Card Setup window.

8 If you know your DNS server IP address(es), click the **Hostname/DNS** tab in **Network Settings** and then enter the DNS server information in the fields provided.

🕵 YaST2@linux-h2oz 🧐		
Enter the name for this computer and the DNS domain that it belongs to.	Network Settings Global Options Overview Hostname,	/DNS Routing
Optionally enter the name server list and domain search list.	Hostname and Domain Name Hostname linux-h2oz	Domain Name
Note that the hostname is globalit applies to all interfaces, not just	<u>C</u> hange Hostname via DHCP <u>W</u> rite Hostname to /etc/hosts	
this one. The domain is	Ch <u>a</u> nge /etc/resolv.conf manually Name Servers and Domain Search List Name Server <u>1</u>	Do <u>m</u> ain Search
especially important if this computer is a mail server.	10.0.2.3 Name Server <u>2</u>	
If you are using DHCP to get an IP address, check whether to get a hostname via DHCP.	Name Server <u>3</u>	
The hostname of your host (which can be seen by issuing the <i>hostname</i> command)	Update DNS data via DHCP	
will be set automatically by the DHCP client. You may want to disable this option if you connect to different networks		
	Back	Abo <u>r</u> t <u>Einish</u>

9 Click **Finish** to save your settings and close the window.

Verifying Settings

Click the **KNetwork Manager** icon on the **Task bar** to check your TCP/IP properties. From the **Options** sub-menu, select **Show Connection Information**.

Figure 162 openSUSE 10.3: KNetwork Manager

Enable Wireless		
🗊 Disable Wireless	🦦 KNetworkManager	
Y Switch to Online Mode	🔍 Wired Devices	
😪 Switch to Offline Mode	🗙 Wired Network	
🗊 Show Connection Information	🔜 Dial-Up Connections	•
💫 Configure	🍳 Options	•
	🔜 🕜 <u>H</u> elp	•
	0 Quit	Ctrl+Q

When the **Connection Status - KNetwork Manager** window opens, click the **Statistics tab** to see if your connection is working properly.

😺 Connecti	on Status - KNetwor	kManager 🔄 🤈 🗖 🗙
Device	🔌 <u>A</u> ddresse 🛛 🔇	Statistics
	Received	Transmitted
Bytes	2317441	841875
MBytes	2.2	0.8
Packets	3621	3140
Errors	0	0
Dropped	0	0
KBytes/s	0.0	0.0
		<mark>∕ </mark> ΩK

Figure 163 openSUSE: Connection Status - KNetwork Manager

Wireless LANs

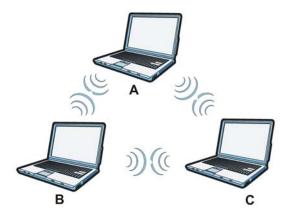
Wireless LAN Topologies

This section discusses ad-hoc and infrastructure wireless LAN topologies.

Ad-hoc Wireless LAN Configuration

The simplest WLAN configuration is an independent (Ad-hoc) WLAN that connects a set of computers with wireless adapters (A, B, C). Any time two or more wireless adapters are within range of each other, they can set up an independent network, which is commonly referred to as an ad-hoc network or Independent Basic Service Set (IBSS). The following diagram shows an example of notebook computers using wireless adapters to form an ad-hoc wireless LAN.

Figure 164 Peer-to-Peer Communication in an Ad-hoc Network



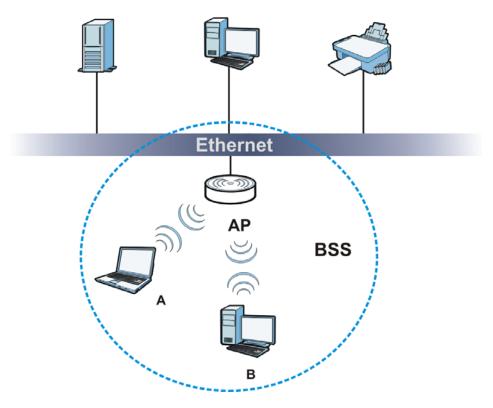
BSS

A Basic Service Set (BSS) exists when all communications between wireless clients or between a wireless client and a wired network client go through one access point (AP).

Intra-BSS traffic is traffic between wireless clients in the BSS. When Intra-BSS is enabled, wireless client A and B can access the wired network and communicate with each other. When Intra-BSS is

disabled, wireless client **A** and **B** can still access the wired network but cannot communicate with each other.

Figure 165 Basic Service Set



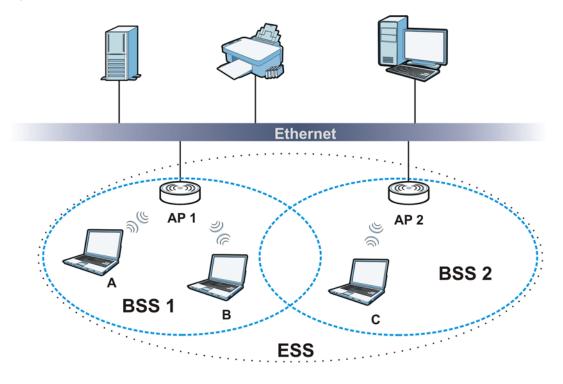
ESS

An Extended Service Set (ESS) consists of a series of overlapping BSSs, each containing an access point, with each access point connected together by a wired network. This wired connection between APs is called a Distribution System (DS).

This type of wireless LAN topology is called an Infrastructure WLAN. The Access Points not only provide communication with the wired network but also mediate wireless network traffic in the immediate neighborhood.

An ESSID (ESS IDentification) uniquely identifies each ESS. All access points and their associated wireless clients within the same ESS must have the same ESSID in order to communicate.

Figure 166 Infrastructure WLAN



Channel

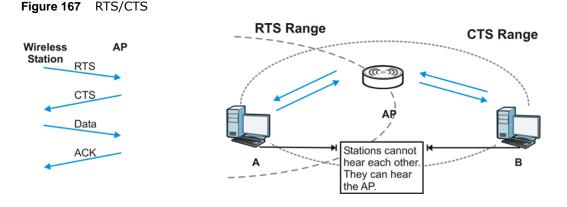
A channel is the radio frequency(ies) used by wireless devices to transmit and receive data. Channels available depend on your geographical area. You may have a choice of channels (for your region) so you should use a channel different from an adjacent AP (access point) to reduce interference. Interference occurs when radio signals from different access points overlap causing interference and degrading performance.

Adjacent channels partially overlap however. To avoid interference due to overlap, your AP should be on a channel at least five channels away from a channel that an adjacent AP is using. For example, if your region has 11 channels and an adjacent AP is using channel 1, then you need to select a channel between 6 or 11.

RTS/CTS

A hidden node occurs when two stations are within range of the same access point, but are not within range of each other. The following figure illustrates a hidden node. Both stations (STA) are within range of the access point (AP) or wireless gateway, but out-of-range of each other, so they

cannot "hear" each other, that is they do not know if the channel is currently being used. Therefore, they are considered hidden from each other.



When station **A** sends data to the AP, it might not know that the station **B** is already using the channel. If these two stations send data at the same time, collisions may occur when both sets of data arrive at the AP at the same time, resulting in a loss of messages for both stations.

RTS/CTS is designed to prevent collisions due to hidden nodes. An **RTS/CTS** defines the biggest size data frame you can send before an RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake is invoked.

When a data frame exceeds the **RTS/CTS** value you set, the station that wants to transmit this frame must first send an RTS (Request To Send) message to the AP for permission to send it. The AP then responds with a CTS (Clear to Send) message to all other stations within its range to notify them to defer their transmission. It also reserves and confirms with the requesting station the time frame for the requested transmission.

Stations can send frames smaller than the specified **RTS/CTS** directly to the AP without the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

You should only configure **RTS/CTS** if the possibility of hidden nodes exists on your network and the "cost" of resending large frames is more than the extra network overhead involved in the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake.

If the **RTS/CTS** value is greater than the **Fragmentation Threshold** value (see next), then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach **RTS/CTS** size.

Note: Enabling the RTS Threshold causes redundant network overhead that could negatively affect the throughput performance instead of providing a remedy.

Fragmentation Threshold

A **Fragmentation Threshold** is the maximum data fragment size that can be sent in the wireless network before the AP will fragment the packet into smaller data frames.

A large **Fragmentation Threshold** is recommended for networks not prone to interference while you should set a smaller threshold for busy networks or networks that are prone to interference.

If the **Fragmentation Threshold** value is smaller than the **RTS/CTS** value (see previously) you set then the RTS (Request To Send)/CTS (Clear to Send) handshake will never occur as data frames will be fragmented before they reach **RTS/CTS** size.

Preamble Type

Preamble is used to signal that data is coming to the receiver. Short and long refer to the length of the synchronization field in a packet.

Short preamble increases performance as less time sending preamble means more time for sending data. All IEEE 802.11 compliant wireless adapters support long preamble, but not all support short preamble.

Use long preamble if you are unsure what preamble mode other wireless devices on the network support, and to provide more reliable communications in busy wireless networks.

Use short preamble if you are sure all wireless devices on the network support it, and to provide more efficient communications.

Use the dynamic setting to automatically use short preamble when all wireless devices on the network support it, otherwise the Router uses long preamble.

Note: The wireless devices MUST use the same preamble mode in order to communicate.

IEEE 802.11g Wireless LAN

IEEE 802.11g is fully compatible with the IEEE 802.11b standard. This means an IEEE 802.11b adapter can interface directly with an IEEE 802.11g access point (and vice versa) at 11 Mbps or lower depending on range. IEEE 802.11g has several intermediate rate steps between the maximum and minimum data rates. The IEEE 802.11g data rate and modulation are as follows:

DATA RATE (MBPS)	MODULATION
1	DBPSK (Differential Binary Phase Shift Keyed)
2	DQPSK (Differential Quadrature Phase Shift Keying)
5.5 / 11	CCK (Complementary Code Keying)
6/9/12/18/24/36/48/ 54	OFDM (Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing)

Table 96 IEEE 802.11g

Wireless Security Overview

Wireless security is vital to your network to protect wireless communication between wireless clients, access points and the wired network.

Wireless security methods available on the Router are data encryption, wireless client authentication, restricting access by device MAC address and hiding the Router identity.

The following figure shows the relative effectiveness of these wireless security methods available on your Router.

SECURITY LEVEL	SECURITY TYPE
Least	Unique SSID (Default)
Secure	Unique SSID with Hide SSID Enabled
	MAC Address Filtering
	WEP Encryption
	IEEE802.1x EAP with RADIUS Server Authentication
	Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)
	WPA2
Most Secure	

Table 97 Wireless Security Levels

Note: You must enable the same wireless security settings on the Router and on all wireless clients that you want to associate with it.

IEEE 802.1x

In June 2001, the IEEE 802.1x standard was designed to extend the features of IEEE 802.11 to support extended authentication as well as providing additional accounting and control features. It is supported by Windows XP and a number of network devices. Some advantages of IEEE 802.1x are:

- User based identification that allows for roaming.
- Support for RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) for centralized user profile and accounting management on a network RADIUS server.
- Support for EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol, RFC 2486) that allows additional authentication methods to be deployed with no changes to the access point or the wireless clients.

RADIUS

RADIUS is based on a client-server model that supports authentication, authorization and accounting. The access point is the client and the server is the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server handles the following tasks:

• Authentication

Determines the identity of the users.

Authorization

Determines the network services available to authenticated users once they are connected to the network.

Accounting

Keeps track of the client's network activity.

RADIUS is a simple package exchange in which your AP acts as a message relay between the wireless client and the network RADIUS server.

Types of RADIUS Messages

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user authentication:

Access-Request

Sent by an access point requesting authentication.

Access-Reject

Sent by a RADIUS server rejecting access.

• Access-Accept

Sent by a RADIUS server allowing access.

Access-Challenge

Sent by a RADIUS server requesting more information in order to allow access. The access point sends a proper response from the user and then sends another Access-Request message.

The following types of RADIUS messages are exchanged between the access point and the RADIUS server for user accounting:

Accounting-Request

Sent by the access point requesting accounting.

• Accounting-Response

Sent by the RADIUS server to indicate that it has started or stopped accounting.

In order to ensure network security, the access point and the RADIUS server use a shared secret key, which is a password, they both know. The key is not sent over the network. In addition to the shared key, password information exchanged is also encrypted to protect the network from unauthorized access.

Types of EAP Authentication

This section discusses some popular authentication types: EAP-MD5, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, PEAP and LEAP. Your wireless LAN device may not support all authentication types.

EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) is an authentication protocol that runs on top of the IEEE 802.1x transport mechanism in order to support multiple types of user authentication. By using EAP to interact with an EAP-compatible RADIUS server, an access point helps a wireless station and a RADIUS server perform authentication.

The type of authentication you use depends on the RADIUS server and an intermediary AP(s) that supports IEEE 802.1x.

For EAP-TLS authentication type, you must first have a wired connection to the network and obtain the certificate(s) from a certificate authority (CA). A certificate (also called digital IDs) can be used to authenticate users and a CA issues certificates and guarantees the identity of each certificate owner.

EAP-MD5 (Message-Digest Algorithm 5)

MD5 authentication is the simplest one-way authentication method. The authentication server sends a challenge to the wireless client. The wireless client 'proves' that it knows the password by encrypting the password with the challenge and sends back the information. Password is not sent in plain text.

However, MD5 authentication has some weaknesses. Since the authentication server needs to get the plaintext passwords, the passwords must be stored. Thus someone other than the authentication server may access the password file. In addition, it is possible to impersonate an authentication server as MD5 authentication method does not perform mutual authentication. Finally, MD5 authentication method does not support data encryption with dynamic session key. You must configure WEP encryption keys for data encryption.

EAP-TLS (Transport Layer Security)

With EAP-TLS, digital certifications are needed by both the server and the wireless clients for mutual authentication. The server presents a certificate to the client. After validating the identity of the server, the client sends a different certificate to the server. The exchange of certificates is done in the open before a secured tunnel is created. This makes user identity vulnerable to passive attacks. A digital certificate is an electronic ID card that authenticates the sender's identity. However, to implement EAP-TLS, you need a Certificate Authority (CA) to handle certificates, which imposes a management overhead.

EAP-TTLS (Tunneled Transport Layer Service)

EAP-TTLS is an extension of the EAP-TLS authentication that uses certificates for only the serverside authentications to establish a secure connection. Client authentication is then done by sending username and password through the secure connection, thus client identity is protected. For client authentication, EAP-TTLS supports EAP methods and legacy authentication methods such as PAP, CHAP, MS-CHAP and MS-CHAP v2.

PEAP (Protected EAP)

Like EAP-TTLS, server-side certificate authentication is used to establish a secure connection, then use simple username and password methods through the secured connection to authenticate the clients, thus hiding client identity. However, PEAP only supports EAP methods, such as EAP-MD5, EAP-MSCHAPv2 and EAP-GTC (EAP-Generic Token Card), for client authentication. EAP-GTC is implemented only by Cisco.

LEAP

LEAP (Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol) is a Cisco implementation of IEEE 802.1x.

Dynamic WEP Key Exchange

The AP maps a unique key that is generated with the RADIUS server. This key expires when the wireless connection times out, disconnects or reauthentication times out. A new WEP key is generated each time reauthentication is performed.

If this feature is enabled, it is not necessary to configure a default encryption key in the wireless security configuration screen. You may still configure and store keys, but they will not be used while dynamic WEP is enabled.

Note: EAP-MD5 cannot be used with Dynamic WEP Key Exchange

For added security, certificate-based authentications (EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS and PEAP) use dynamic keys for data encryption. They are often deployed in corporate environments, but for public deployment, a simple user name and password pair is more practical. The following table is a comparison of the features of authentication types.

		EAP-TLS	EAP-TTLS	PEAP	
	EAP-MD5	EAP-ILS	EAP-IILS	PEAP	LEAP
Mutual Authentication	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Certificate – Client	No	Yes	Optional	Optional	No
Certificate – Server	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Dynamic Key Exchange	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Credential Integrity	None	Strong	Strong	Strong	Moderate
Deployment Difficulty	Easy	Hard	Moderate	Moderate	Moderate
Client Identity Protection	No	No	Yes	Yes	No

 Table 98
 Comparison of EAP Authentication Types

WPA and WPA2

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a subset of the IEEE 802.11i standard. WPA2 (IEEE 802.11i) is a wireless security standard that defines stronger encryption, authentication and key management than WPA.

Key differences between WPA or WPA2 and WEP are improved data encryption and user authentication.

If both an AP and the wireless clients support WPA2 and you have an external RADIUS server, use WPA2 for stronger data encryption. If you don't have an external RADIUS server, you should use WPA2-PSK (WPA2-Pre-Shared Key) that only requires a single (identical) password entered into each access point, wireless gateway and wireless client. As long as the passwords match, a wireless client will be granted access to a WLAN.

If the AP or the wireless clients do not support WPA2, just use WPA or WPA-PSK depending on whether you have an external RADIUS server or not.

Select WEP only when the AP and/or wireless clients do not support WPA or WPA2. WEP is less secure than WPA or WPA2.

Encryption

WPA improves data encryption by using Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP), Message Integrity Check (MIC) and IEEE 802.1x. WPA2 also uses TKIP when required for compatibility reasons, but offers stronger encryption than TKIP with Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) in the Counter mode with Cipher block chaining Message authentication code Protocol (CCMP).

TKIP uses 128-bit keys that are dynamically generated and distributed by the authentication server. AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) is a block cipher that uses a 256-bit mathematical algorithm

called Rijndael. They both include a per-packet key mixing function, a Message Integrity Check (MIC) named Michael, an extended initialization vector (IV) with sequencing rules, and a re-keying mechanism.

WPA and WPA2 regularly change and rotate the encryption keys so that the same encryption key is never used twice.

The RADIUS server distributes a Pairwise Master Key (PMK) key to the AP that then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the PMK to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients. This all happens in the background automatically.

The Message Integrity Check (MIC) is designed to prevent an attacker from capturing data packets, altering them and resending them. The MIC provides a strong mathematical function in which the receiver and the transmitter each compute and then compare the MIC. If they do not match, it is assumed that the data has been tampered with and the packet is dropped.

By generating unique data encryption keys for every data packet and by creating an integrity checking mechanism (MIC), with TKIP and AES it is more difficult to decrypt data on a Wi-Fi network than WEP and difficult for an intruder to break into the network.

The encryption mechanisms used for WPA(2) and WPA(2)-PSK are the same. The only difference between the two is that WPA(2)-PSK uses a simple common password, instead of user-specific credentials. The common-password approach makes WPA(2)-PSK susceptible to brute-force password-guessing attacks but it's still an improvement over WEP as it employs a consistent, single, alphanumeric password to derive a PMK which is used to generate unique temporal encryption keys. This prevent all wireless devices sharing the same encryption keys. (a weakness of WEP)

User Authentication

WPA and WPA2 apply IEEE 802.1x and Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) to authenticate wireless clients using an external RADIUS database. WPA2 reduces the number of key exchange messages from six to four (CCMP 4-way handshake) and shortens the time required to connect to a network. Other WPA2 authentication features that are different from WPA include key caching and pre-authentication. These two features are optional and may not be supported in all wireless devices.

Key caching allows a wireless client to store the PMK it derived through a successful authentication with an AP. The wireless client uses the PMK when it tries to connect to the same AP and does not need to go with the authentication process again.

Pre-authentication enables fast roaming by allowing the wireless client (already connecting to an AP) to perform IEEE 802.1x authentication with another AP before connecting to it.

Wireless Client WPA Supplicants

A wireless client supplicant is the software that runs on an operating system instructing the wireless client how to use WPA. At the time of writing, the most widely available supplicant is the WPA patch for Windows XP, Funk Software's Odyssey client.

The Windows XP patch is a free download that adds WPA capability to Windows XP's built-in "Zero Configuration" wireless client. However, you must run Windows XP to use it.

WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

To set up WPA(2), you need the IP address of the RADIUS server, its port number (default is 1812), and the RADIUS shared secret. A WPA(2) application example with an external RADIUS server looks as follows. "A" is the RADIUS server. "DS" is the distribution system.

- 1 The AP passes the wireless client's authentication request to the RADIUS server.
- 2 The RADIUS server then checks the user's identification against its database and grants or denies network access accordingly.
- **3** A 256-bit Pairwise Master Key (PMK) is derived from the authentication process by the RADIUS server and the client.
- 4 The RADIUS server distributes the PMK to the AP. The AP then sets up a key hierarchy and management system, using the PMK to dynamically generate unique data encryption keys. The keys are used to encrypt every data packet that is wirelessly communicated between the AP and the wireless clients.

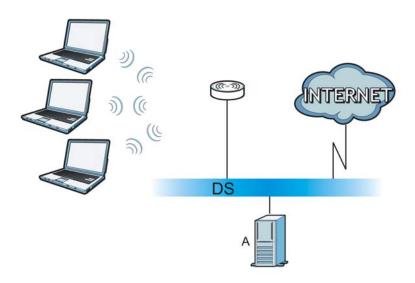


Figure 168 WPA(2) with RADIUS Application Example

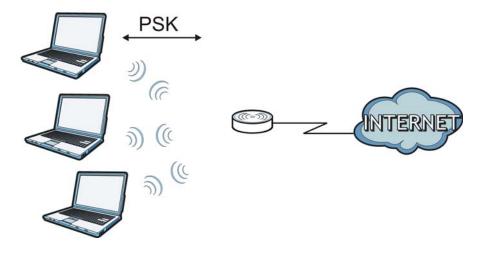
WPA(2)-PSK Application Example

A WPA(2)-PSK application looks as follows.

- 1 First enter identical passwords into the AP and all wireless clients. The Pre-Shared Key (PSK) must consist of between 8 and 63 ASCII characters or 64 hexadecimal characters (including spaces and symbols).
- 2 The AP checks each wireless client's password and allows it to join the network only if the password matches.
- **3** The AP and wireless clients generate a common PMK (Pairwise Master Key). The key itself is not sent over the network, but is derived from the PSK and the SSID.

4 The AP and wireless clients use the TKIP or AES encryption process, the PMK and information exchanged in a handshake to create temporal encryption keys. They use these keys to encrypt data exchanged between them.

Figure 169 WPA(2)-PSK Authentication



Security Parameters Summary

Refer to this table to see what other security parameters you should configure for each authentication method or key management protocol type. MAC address filters are not dependent on how you configure these security features.

AUTHENTICATION METHOD/ KEY MANAGEMENT PROTOCOL	ENCRYPTIO N METHOD	ENTER MANUAL KEY	IEEE 802.1X
Open	None	No	Disable
			Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
Open	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Disable
Shared	WEP	No	Enable with Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Enable without Dynamic WEP Key
		Yes	Disable
WPA	TKIP/AES	No	Enable
WPA-PSK	TKIP/AES	Yes	Disable
WPA2	TKIP/AES	No	Enable
WPA2-PSK	TKIP/AES	Yes	Disable

 Table 99
 Wireless Security Relational Matrix

Antenna Overview

An antenna couples RF signals onto air. A transmitter within a wireless device sends an RF signal to the antenna, which propagates the signal through the air. The antenna also operates in reverse by capturing RF signals from the air.

Positioning the antennas properly increases the range and coverage area of a wireless LAN.

Antenna Characteristics

Frequency

An antenna in the frequency of 2.4GHz or 5GHz is needed to communicate efficiently in a wireless LAN $% \left(\mathcal{A}^{2}\right) =0$

Radiation Pattern

A radiation pattern is a diagram that allows you to visualize the shape of the antenna's coverage area.

Antenna Gain

Antenna gain, measured in dB (decibel), is the increase in coverage within the RF beam width. Higher antenna gain improves the range of the signal for better communications.

For an indoor site, each 1 dB increase in antenna gain results in a range increase of approximately 2.5%. For an unobstructed outdoor site, each 1dB increase in gain results in a range increase of approximately 5%. Actual results may vary depending on the network environment.

Antenna gain is sometimes specified in dBi, which is how much the antenna increases the signal power compared to using an isotropic antenna. An isotropic antenna is a theoretical perfect antenna that sends out radio signals equally well in all directions. dBi represents the true gain that the antenna provides.

Types of Antennas for WLAN

There are two types of antennas used for wireless LAN applications.

- Omni-directional antennas send the RF signal out in all directions on a horizontal plane. The coverage area is torus-shaped (like a donut) which makes these antennas ideal for a room environment. With a wide coverage area, it is possible to make circular overlapping coverage areas with multiple access points.
- Directional antennas concentrate the RF signal in a beam, like a flashlight does with the light from its bulb. The angle of the beam determines the width of the coverage pattern. Angles typically range from 20 degrees (very directional) to 120 degrees (less directional). Directional antennas are ideal for hallways and outdoor point-to-point applications.

Positioning Antennas

In general, antennas should be mounted as high as practically possible and free of obstructions. In point-to-point application, position both antennas at the same height and in a direct line of sight to each other to attain the best performance.

For omni-directional antennas mounted on a table, desk, and so on, point the antenna up. For omni-directional antennas mounted on a wall or ceiling, point the antenna down. For a single AP application, place omni-directional antennas as close to the center of the coverage area as possible.

For directional antennas, point the antenna in the direction of the desired coverage area.

Common Services

The following table lists some commonly-used services and their associated protocols and port numbers. For a comprehensive list of port numbers, ICMP type/code numbers and services, visit the IANA (Internet Assigned Number Authority) web site.

- Name: This is a short, descriptive name for the service. You can use this one or create a different one, if you like.
- **Protocol**: This is the type of IP protocol used by the service. If this is **TCP/UDP**, then the service uses the same port number with TCP and UDP. If this is **USER-DEFINED**, the **Port(s)** is the IP protocol number, not the port number.
- **Port(s)**: This value depends on the **Protocol**. Please refer to RFC 1700 for further information about port numbers.
 - If the Protocol is TCP, UDP, or TCP/UDP, this is the IP port number.
 - If the Protocol is USER, this is the IP protocol number.
- **Description**: This is a brief explanation of the applications that use this service or the situations in which this service is used.

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION	
AH (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	51	The IPSEC AH (Authentication Header) tunneling protocol uses this service.	
AIM/New-ICQ	ТСР	5190	AOL's Internet Messenger service. It is also used as a listening port by ICQ.	
AUTH	ТСР	113	Authentication protocol used by some servers.	
BGP	ТСР	179	Border Gateway Protocol.	
BOOTP_CLIENT	UDP	68	DHCP Client.	
BOOTP_SERVER	UDP	67	DHCP Server.	
CU-SEEME	ТСР	7648	A popular videoconferencing solution from	
	UDP	24032	White Pines Software.	
DNS	TCP/UDP	53	Domain Name Server, a service that matches web names (for example <u>www.zyxel.com</u>) to IP numbers.	
ESP (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	50	The IPSEC ESP (Encapsulation Security Protocol) tunneling protocol uses this service.	
FINGER	ТСР	79	Finger is a UNIX or Internet related command that can be used to find out if a user is logged on.	
FTP	ТСР	20	File Transfer Program, a program to enable	
	ТСР	21	fast transfer of files, including large files that may not be possible by e-mail.	
H.323	ТСР	1720	NetMeeting uses this protocol.	

 Table 100
 Commonly Used Services

 Table 100
 Commonly Used Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
НТТР	ТСР	80	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol - a client/ server protocol for the world wide web.
HTTPS	ТСР	443	HTTPS is a secured http session often used in e-commerce.
ICMP	User-Defined	1	Internet Control Message Protocol is often used for diagnostic or routing purposes.
ICQ	UDP	4000	This is a popular Internet chat program.
IGMP (MULTICAST)	User-Defined	2	Internet Group Management Protocol is used when sending packets to a specific group of hosts.
IKE	UDP	500	The Internet Key Exchange algorithm is used for key distribution and management.
IRC	TCP/UDP	6667	This is another popular Internet chat program.
MSN Messenger	ТСР	1863	Microsoft Networks' messenger service uses this protocol.
NEW-ICQ	ТСР	5190	An Internet chat program.
NEWS	ТСР	144	A protocol for news groups.
NFS	UDP	2049	Network File System - NFS is a client/ server distributed file service that provides transparent file sharing for network environments.
NNTP	ТСР	119	Network News Transport Protocol is the delivery mechanism for the USENET newsgroup service.
PING	User-Defined	1	Packet INternet Groper is a protocol that sends out ICMP echo requests to test whether or not a remote host is reachable.
POP3	ТСР	110	Post Office Protocol version 3 lets a client computer get e-mail from a POP3 server through a temporary connection (TCP/IP or other).
РРТР	ТСР	1723	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the control channel.
PPTP_TUNNEL (GRE)	User-Defined	47	PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the data channel.
RCMD	ТСР	512	Remote Command Service.
REAL_AUDIO	ТСР	7070	A streaming audio service that enables real time sound over the web.
REXEC	ТСР	514	Remote Execution Daemon.
RLOGIN	ТСР	513	Remote Login.
RTELNET	ТСР	107	Remote Telnet.
RTSP	TCP/UDP	554	The Real Time Streaming (media control) Protocol (RTSP) is a remote control for multimedia on the Internet.
SFTP	ТСР	115	Simple File Transfer Protocol.

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
SMTP	ТСР	25	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is the message-exchange standard for the Internet. SMTP enables you to move messages from one e-mail server to another.
SNMP	TCP/UDP	161	Simple Network Management Program.
SNMP-TRAPS	TCP/UDP	162	Traps for use with the SNMP (RFC:1215).
SQL-NET	ТСР	1521	Structured Query Language is an interface to access data on many different types of database systems, including mainframes, midrange systems, UNIX systems and network servers.
SSH	TCP/UDP	22	Secure Shell Remote Login Program.
STRM WORKS	UDP	1558	Stream Works Protocol.
SYSLOG	UDP	514	Syslog allows you to send system logs to a UNIX server.
TACACS	UDP	49	Login Host Protocol used for (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System).
TELNET	ТСР	23	Telnet is the login and terminal emulation protocol common on the Internet and in UNIX environments. It operates over TCP/ IP networks. Its primary function is to allow users to log into remote host systems.
TFTP	UDP	69	Trivial File Transfer Protocol is an Internet file transfer protocol similar to FTP, but uses the UDP (User Datagram Protocol) rather than TCP (Transmission Control Protocol).
VDOLIVE	ТСР	7000	Another videoconferencing solution.

 Table 100
 Commonly Used Services (continued)

Legal Information

Copyright

Copyright © 2012 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Certifications

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

The device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

This device has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy, and if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this device does cause harmful interference to radio/television reception, which can be determined by turning the device off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- 1 Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- 2 Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.

- **3** Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- 4 Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.



FCC Radiation Exposure Statement

- This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
- IEEE 802.11b or 802.11g operation of this product in the U.S.A. is firmware-limited to channels 1 through 11.
- To comply with FCC RF exposure compliance requirements, a separation distance of at least 20 cm must be maintained between the antenna of this device and all persons.



依據 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司、商號或使用 者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信;經發現 有干擾現象時,應立即停用,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信,指依電信規定作業之無線電信。低功率射頻電機須忍 受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

本機限在不干擾合法電臺與不受被干擾保障條件下於室內使用。減少電磁波影響,請妥適使用。

Notices

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device has been designed for the WLAN 2.4 GHz network throughout the EC region and Switzerland, with restrictions in France.

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Industry Canada Statement

This device complies with RSS-210 of the Industry Canada Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1 this device may not cause interference and

2 this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device

This device has been designed to operate with an antenna having a maximum gain of 2dBi.

Antenna having a higher gain is strictly prohibited per regulations of Industry Canada. The required antenna impedance is 50 ohms.

To reduce potential radio interference to other users, the antenna type and its gain should be so chosen that the EIRP is not more than required for successful communication.

IC Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

Viewing Certifications

- 1 Go to <u>http://www.zyxel.com</u>.
- 2 Select your product on the ZyXEL home page to go to that product's page.
- **3** Select the certification you wish to view from this page.

ZyXEL Limited Warranty

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in material or workmanship for a specific period (the Warranty Period) from the date of purchase. The Warranty Period varies by region. Check with your vendor and/or the authorized ZyXEL local distributor for details about the Warranty Period of this product. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact your vendor. You may also refer to the warranty policy for the region in which you bought the device at http://www.zyxel.com/web/ support_warranty_info.php.

Registration

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at www.zyxel.com.

Open Source Licenses

This product contains in part some free software distributed under GPL license terms and/or GPL like licenses. Open source licenses are provided with the firmware package. You can download the latest firmware at www.zyxel.com. To obtain the source code covered under those Licenses, please contact support@zyxel.com.tw to get it.

Regulatory Information

European Union

The following information applies if you use the product within the European Union.

Declaration of Conformity with Regard to EU Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Compliance Information for 2.4GHz and 5GHz Wireless Products Relevant to the EU and Other Countries Following the EU Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

[Czech]	ZyXEL tímto prohlašuje, že tento zařízení je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/EC.
[Danish]	Undertegnede ZyXEL erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr udstyr overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
[German]	Hiermit erklärt ZyXEL, dass sich das Gerät Ausstattung in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EU befindet.
[Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab ZyXEL seadme seadmed vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, ZyXEL declares that this equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
[Spanish]	Por medio de la presente ZyXEL declara que el equipo cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
[Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ ΖΥΧΕΙ ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ εξοπλισμός ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕC.
[French]	Par la présente ZyXEL déclare que l'appareil équipements est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/EC.
[Italian]	Con la presente ZyXEL dichiara che questo attrezzatura è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
[Latvian]	Ar šo ZyXEL deklarē, ka iekārtas atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
[Lithuanian]	Šiuo ZyXEL deklaruoja, kad šis įranga atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
[Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart ZyXEL dat het toestel uitrusting in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EC.

[Maltese]	Hawnhekk, ZyXEL, jiddikjara li dan tagħmir jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
[Hungarian]	Alulírott, ZyXEL nyilatkozom, hogy a berendezés megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EK irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
[Polish]	Niniejszym ZyXEL oświadcza, że sprzęt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
[Portuguese]	ZyXEL declara que este equipamento está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/EC.
[Slovenian]	ZyXEL izjavlja, da je ta oprema v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/EC.
[Slovak]	ZyXEL týmto vyhlasuje, že zariadenia spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/EC.
[Finnish]	ZyXEL vakuuttaa täten että laitteet tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
[Swedish]	Härmed intygar ZyXEL att denna utrustning står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EC.
[Bulgarian]	С настоящото ZyXEL декларира, че това оборудване е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредбите на Директива 1999/5/EC.
[Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir, ZyXEL því yfir að þessi búnaður er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og önnur viðeigandi ákvæði tilskipunar 1999/5/EC.
[Norwegian]	Erklærer herved ZyXEL at dette utstyret er I samsvar med de grunnleggende kravene og andre relevante bestemmelser I direktiv 1999/5/EF.
[Romanian]	Prin prezenta, ZyXEL declară că acest echipament este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale și alte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 1999/5/EC.

(()

National Restrictions

This product may be used in all EU countries (and other countries following the EU directive 1999/ 5/EC) without any limitation except for the countries mentioned below:

Ce produit peut être utilisé dans tous les pays de l'UE (et dans tous les pays ayant transposés la directive 1999/5/CE) sans aucune limitation, excepté pour les pays mentionnés ci-dessous:

Questo prodotto è utilizzabile in tutte i paesi EU (ed in tutti gli altri paesi che seguono le direttive EU 1999/5/EC) senza nessuna limitazione, eccetto per i paesii menzionati di seguito:

Das Produkt kann in allen EU Staaten ohne Einschränkungen eingesetzt werden (sowie in anderen Staaten die der EU Direktive 1995/5/CE folgen) mit Außnahme der folgenden aufgeführten Staaten:

In the majority of the EU and other European countries, the 2, 4- and 5-GHz bands have been made available for the use of wireless local area networks (LANs). Later in this document you will find an overview of countries inwhich additional restrictions or requirements or both are applicable.

The requirements for any country may evolve. ZyXEL recommends that you check with the local authorities for the latest status of their national regulations for both the 2,4- and 5-GHz wireless LANs.

The following countries have restrictions and/or requirements in addition to those given in the table labeled "*Overview of Regulatory Requirements for Wireless LANs*":.

Overview of Regulatory Requirements for Wireless LANs					
Frequency Band (MHz) Max Power Level Indoor ONLY Indoor and Outdoor					
	(EIRP) ¹ (mW)				
2400-2483.5	100		V		
5150-5350	200	V			
5470-5725	1000		V		

Belgium

The Belgian Institute for Postal Services and Telecommunications (BIPT) must be notified of any outdoor wireless link having a range exceeding 300 meters. Please check http://www.bipt.be for more details.

Draadloze verbindingen voor buitengebruik en met een reikwijdte van meer dan 300 meter dienen aangemeld te worden bij het Belgisch Instituut voor postdiensten en telecommunicatie (BIPT). Zie http://www.bipt.be voor meer gegevens.

Les liaisons sans fil pour une utilisation en extérieur d'une distance supérieure à 300 mètres doivent être notifiées à l'Institut Belge des services Postaux et des Télécommunications (IBPT). Visitez http://www.ibpt.be pour de plus amples détails.

Denmark

In Denmark, the band 5150 - 5350 MHz is also allowed for outdoor usage.

I Danmark må frekvensbåndet 5150 - 5350 også anvendes udendørs.

France

For 2.4 GHz, the output power is restricted to 10 mW EIRP when the product is used outdoors in the band 2454 - 2483.5 MHz. There are no restrictions when used indoors or in other parts of the 2.4 GHz band. Check http://www.arcep.fr/ for more details.

Pour la bande 2.4 GHz, la puissance est limitée à 10 mW en p.i.r.e. pour les équipements utilisés en extérieur dans la bande 2454 - 2483.5 MHz. Il n'y a pas de restrictions pour des utilisations en intérieur ou dans d'autres parties de la bande 2.4 GHz. Consultez http://www.arcep.fr/ pour de plus amples détails.

R&TTE 1999/5/EC					
	WLAN 2.4 – 2.4835 GHz				
	IEEE 802.11 b/g/n				
Location	Frequency Range(GHz)	Power (EIRP)			
Indoor (No restrictions)	2.4 - 2.4835	100mW (20dBm)			
Outdoor	2.4 - 2.454	100mW (20dBm)			
	2.454 - 2.4835	10mW (10dBm)			

Italy

This product meets the National Radio Interface and the requirements specified in the National Frequency Allocation Table for Italy. Unless this wireless LAN product is operating within the

boundaries of the owner's property, its use requires a "general authorization." Please check http:// www.sviluppoeconomico.gov.it/ for more details.

Questo prodotto è conforme alla specifiche di Interfaccia Radio Nazionali e rispetta il Piano Nazionale di ripartizione delle frequenze in Italia. Se non viene installato all 'interno del proprio fondo, l'utilizzo di prodotti Wireless LAN richiede una "Autorizzazione Generale". Consultare http:// www.sviluppoeconomico.gov.it/ per maggiori dettagli.

Latvia

The outdoor usage of the 2.4 GHz band requires an authorization from the Electronic Communications Office. Please check http://www.esd.lv for more details.

2.4 GHz frekvenèu joslas izmantoðanai ârpus telpâm nepiecieðama atïauja no Elektronisko sakaru direkcijas. Vairâk informâcijas: http://www.esd.lv.

Notes:

1. Although Norway, Switzerland and Liechtenstein are not EU member states, the EU Directive 1999/5/EC has also been implemented in those countries.

2. The regulatory limits for maximum output power are specified in EIRP. The EIRP level (in dBm) of a device can be calculated by adding the gain of the antenna used(specified in dBi) to the output power available at the connector (specified in dBm).

COUNTRY	ISO 3166 2 LETTER CODE	COUNTRY	ISO 3166 2 LETTER CODE
Austria	AT	Malta	MT
Belgium	BE	Netherlands	NL
Cyprus	CY	Poland	PL
Czech Republic	CR	Portugal	PT
Denmark	DK	Slovakia	SK
Estonia	EE	Slovenia	SI
Finland	FI	Spain	ES
France	FR	Sweden	SE
Germany	DE	United Kingdom	GB
Greece	GR	Iceland	IS
Hungary	HU	Liechtenstein	LI
Ireland	IE	Norway	NO
Italy	IT	Switzerland	СН
Latvia	LV	Bulgaria	BG
Lithuania	LT	Romania	RO
Luxembourg	LU	Turkey	TR

List of national codes

Safety Warnings

- Do NOT use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do NOT store things on the device.
- Do NOT install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.

- Do NOT open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. ONLY qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device. Please contact your vendor for further information.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Use ONLY an appropriate power adaptor or cord for your device.
- Connect the power adaptor or cord to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe).
- Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Do NOT use the device if the power adaptor or cord is damaged as it might cause electrocution.
- If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, remove it from the power outlet.
- Do NOT attempt to repair the power adaptor or cord. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Do not use the device outside, and make sure all the connections are indoors. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do NOT obstruct the device ventilation slots, as insufficient airflow may harm your device.
- Antenna Warning! This device meets ETSI and FCC certification requirements when using the included antenna(s). Only use the included antenna(s).
- If you wall mount your device, make sure that no electrical lines, gas or water pipes will be damaged.

Your product is marked with this symbol, which is known as the WEEE mark. WEEE stands for Waste Electronics and Electrical Equipment. It means that used electrical and electronic products should not be mixed with general waste. Used electrical and electronic equipment should be treated separately.



Index

Α

ActiveX 158 Address Assignment 118 Advanced Encryption Standard See AES. AES 255 alternative subnet mask notation 211 antenna directional 259 gain 259 omni-directional 259 AP 15 AP (access point) 249 AP Mode menu 74 status screen 72, 78 AP+Bridge 15 Auto-bridge 128, 129

В

```
Bandwidth management
overview 161
priority 163
services 167
Basic Service Set, See BSS 247
BitTorrent 167
Bridge/Repeater 15
bridged APs, security 104
BSS 247
```

С

CA **254** Certificate Authority See CA. certifications 265 notices 266 viewing 267 Channel 64, 73 channel 102, 249 interference 249 Configuration restore 184 content filtering 157 by keyword (in URL) 157 by web feature 157 Cookies 159 copyright 265 CPU usage 65, 73, 79 CTS (Clear to Send) 250

D

Daylight saving 182 **DDNS** 145 see also Dynamic DNS service providers 145 DHCP 45, 135 DHCP server see also Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol DHCP server 132, 135 DHCP table 45 DHCP client information DHCP status disclaimer 265 DNS 137 DNS Server 118 DNS server 137 documentation related 2 Domain Name System 137 Domain Name System. See DNS. duplex setting 65, 73, 80 Dynamic DNS 145

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol 135 dynamic WEP key exchange 254 DynDNS 145 DynDNS see also DDNS 145

Ε

EAP Authentication 253 encryption 103, 255 key 103 WPA compatible 103 ESS 248 ESSID 193 Extended Service Set, See ESS 248

F

FCC interference statement 265 File Transfer Program 167 Firewall ICMP packets 155 Firmware upload 182 file extension using HTTP firmware version 64, 72, 78 fragmentation threshold 250 FTP. see also File Transfer Program 167

G

General wireless LAN screen 104 Guide Quick Start 2

Η

hidden node 249 HTTP 167 Hyper Text Transfer Protocol 167

L

IANA 216 IBSS 247 IEEE 802.11g 251 IGMP 119 see also Internet Group Multicast Protocol version IGMP version 119 Independent Basic Service Set See IBSS 247 initialization vector (IV) 256 Internet Assigned Numbers Authority See IANA 216 Internet Group Multicast Protocol 119 IP Address 133, 140, 141 IP alias 132 IP Pool 135

J

Java 158

L

LAN 131 IP pool setup 132 LAN overview 131 LAN setup 131 LAN TCP/IP 132 Language 185 Link type 65, 73, 79 Local Area Network 131

Μ

MAC 108 MAC address 102, 118 cloning 118 MAC address filter 102 MAC address filtering 108 MAC filter 108 managing the device good habits 16 using the web configurator. See web configurator. using the wireless switch. using the WPS. See WPS. MBSSID 15 Media access control 108 Memory usage 65, 73, 79 Message Integrity Check (MIC) 255 mode 15 Multicast 119 IGMP 119

Ν

NAT 139, 140, 216 how it works 139 overview 139 see also Network Address Translation NAT Traversal 171 Navigation Panel 66, 74 navigation panel 66, 74 Network Address Translation 139, 140

0

Operating Channel 64, 73 operating mode 15 other documentation 2

Ρ

P2P 167 Pairwise Master Key (PMK) 256, 257 peer-to-peer 167 Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet 121 Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol 123 Pool Size 136 Port forwarding 141 default server 140 local server 141 port speed 65, 73, 80 PPPoE 121 dial-up connection PPTP 123 preamble mode 251 product registration 268 PSK 256

Q

Quality of Service (QoS) 111 Quick Start Guide 2

R

RADIUS 252 message types 253 messages 253 shared secret key 253 registration product 268 related documentation 2 Remote management and NAT 168 limitations 168 system timeout 169 Reset button 41 Reset the device 41 Restore configuration 184 RIP 151 Roaming 109 RTS (Request To Send) 250 threshold 249, 250 RTS/CTS Threshold 102, 109, 110

S

safety warnings 271 Scheduling 114 Service and port numbers 156, 166 Service Set 59, 104 Service Set IDentification 59, 104 Service Set IDentity. See SSID. Session Initiated Protocol 167 SIP 167 SSID 59, 64, 73, 79, 102, 104 Static DHCP 136 Static Route 147 Status 63 subnet 209 Subnet Mask 133, 134 subnet mask 210 subnetting 212 Summary DHCP table 45 Packet statistics 46 Wireless station status 47 System General Setup 179 System restart 185

Т

TCP/IP configuration 135 Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) 255 Time setting 181 trigger port 142 Trigger port forwarding 142 example 144 process 144

U

Universal Plug and Play 171 Application 171 Security issues 172 UPnP 171 URL Keyword Blocking 159 User Name 146

V

VoIP **167** VPN **123**

W

WAN (Wide Area Network) 117 WAN advanced 128 WAN MAC address 118 warranty 267 note 267 Web Configurator how to access 37 Overview 37 web configurator 16 Web Proxy 159 WEP Encryption 82, 107, 108 WEP encryption 106 WEP key 106 Wi-Fi Protected Access 255 Wireless association list 47 wireless channel 193 wireless client WPA supplicants 256 wireless LAN 193 wireless LAN scheduling 114 Wireless network basic guidelines 101 channel 102 encryption 103 example 101 MAC address filter 102 overview 101 security 102 SSID 102 Wireless security 102 overview 102 type 102 wireless security 193, 251 wireless switch 16 Wireless tutorial 87 WPS 87 Wizard setup 27 WLAN

interference 249 security parameters 258 World Wide Web 167 WPA 255 key caching 256 pre-authentication 256 user authentication 256 vs WPA-PSK 256 wireless client supplicant 256 with RADIUS application example 257 WPA compatible 103 WPA2 255 user authentication 256 vs WPA2-PSK 256 wireless client supplicant 256 with RADIUS application example 257 WPA2-Pre-Shared Key 255 WPA2-PSK 255, 256 application example 257 WPA-PSK 255, 256 application example 257 WPS 16 WWW 167

Χ

Xbox Live 167